Author: Simon Mak

Table of Contents

Mathematical Notation and Conventions

Scalars, Vectors, and Matrices

- **Scalars:** Lowercase italic letters (e.g., x, y, α, β)
- **Vectors:** Lowercase bold letters (e.g., $\mathbf{x}$, $\mathbf{y}$, $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$)
- **Matrices:** Uppercase bold letters (e.g., $\mathbf{A}$, $\mathbf{B}$, $\mathbf{X}$)
- **Tensors:** Uppercase bold italic letters (e.g., $\boldsymbol{T}$, $\boldsymbol{S}$)

Operations

- **Inner product:** $\mathbf{x} \cdot \mathbf{y}$ or $\langle \mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y} \rangle$
- **Hadamard product (element-wise):** $\mathbf{x} \odot \mathbf{y}$
- **Matrix multiplication:** $\mathbf{AB}$
- **Transpose:** $\mathbf{A}^\top$
- **Inverse:** $\mathbf{A}^{-1}$
- **Gradient:** $\nabla f(\mathbf{x})$
- **Jacobian:** $\mathbf{J}$
- **Hessian:** $\mathbf{H}$

Special Notation for Biodiversity and Ecosystem Services

- S: Species richness (number of species)
- N: Total number of individuals
- p_i: *Proportion of species i*
- H: Shannon diversity index
- D: Simpson diversity index
- PD: Phylogenetic diversity
- FD: Functional diversity
- ES: Ecosystem service
- V: Valuation or value
- R: Risk

Summation and Product Notation

- **Summation:** $\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i = x_1 + x_2 + \ldots + x_n$
- **Product:** $\prod_{i=1}^{n} x_i = x_1 \times x_2 \times \ldots \times x_n$

Probability and Statistics

- $P(A)$: Probability of event A
- $E[X]$: Expected value of random variable X
- $Var(X)$: Variance of X
- $Cov(X, Y)$: Covariance of X and Y
- ρ: Correlation coefficient
- μ: Mean
- σ: Standard deviation
- σ^2: Variance

PART I: FOUNDATIONS OF BIODIVERSITY AND ECOSYSTEM SERVICES

Chapter 1: Introduction to Biodiversity and Ecosystem Services

Biodiversity——the variety of life on Earth——is fundamental to human well-being and economic prosperity. This chapter introduces the core concepts of biodiversity and ecosystem services, establishes the business case for biodiversity accounting, and traces the historical development of this field.

1.1 Defining Biodiversity

Biodiversity, a portmanteau of "biological diversity," encompasses the variety of life on Earth at all its levels, from genes to ecosystems, and can be considered in terms of the number of different entities and their relative frequencies. The concept is not merely a count of species but also includes the diversity within species, between species, and of ecosystems.

Theorem 1.1: Hierarchical Structure of Biodiversity

Biodiversity can be formally represented as a hierarchical system with three nested levels——genetic, species, and ecosystem diversity——each contributing independently and interactively to total biodiversity.

Formal Definition:

Let biodiversity B be represented as a three-dimensional vector in diversity space:

$$B=(G,S,E)\in R_{+}^{3}$$

where: - G = genetic diversity (measured within species) - S = species diversity (measured within ecosystems) - E = ecosystem diversity (measured within landscapes/regions)

Hierarchical Relationships:

- **Genetic Diversity (G):**

$$G_i = H_g(p_1, p_2, \ldots, p_n)$$

- where p_j is the frequency of allele j in species i, and H_g is a diversity function (e.g., expected heterozygosity).

- **Species Diversity (S):**

$$S_k = H_s(q_1, q_2, \ldots, q_m)$$

- where q_i is the abundance of species i in ecosystem k, and H_s is a diversity function (e.g., Shannon index).

- **Ecosystem Diversity (E):**

$$E = H_e(r_1, r_2, \ldots, r_l)$$

- where r_k is the area or abundance of ecosystem type k in the region, and H_e is a diversity function.

Total Biodiversity Function:

$$B = f(G, S, E)$$

where f is an aggregation function. Common forms include:

Additive (weighted sum):

$$B = w_G \cdot G + w_S \cdot S + w_E \cdot E$$

where $w_G + w_S + w_E = 1$

Multiplicative:

$$B = G^{\alpha} \cdot S^{\beta} \cdot E^{\gamma}$$

where α, β, γ are scaling exponents

Proof of Hierarchical Independence:

Proposition: The three levels of biodiversity are partially independent

Proof by counterexample:

Consider three scenarios:

- **High G, Low S, Low E:** A single ecosystem with one species having high genetic diversity
    1. Example: Cultivated crop with many varieties
    2. G = high, S = 1, E = 1
- **Low G, High S, Low E:** A single ecosystem with many species, each with low genetic diversity
    3. Example: Island with many endemic species (founder effect)
    4. G = low, S = high, E = 1
- **Low G, Low S, High E:** Multiple ecosystems, each with few species and low genetic diversity
    5. Example: Harsh environments (deserts, tundra, alpine)
    6. G = low, S = low, E = high

These scenarios demonstrate that G, S, and E can vary independently, though they are often positively correlated in natural systems. Therefore, all three dimensions are necessary to fully characterize biodiversity. ∎

Rationale:

Each level captures different aspects of biological organization:

2. **Genetic diversity** determines adaptive potential and evolutionary resilience
3. **Species diversity** determines ecosystem function and stability
4. **Ecosystem diversity** determines landscape heterogeneity and regional resilience

Properties:

- **Nestedness:** Genetic diversity is nested within species, species within ecosystems
- **Scale-dependence:** Each level operates at different spatial and temporal scales
- **Partial correlation:** Levels are often positively correlated but not perfectly

- **Complementarity:** High diversity at one level doesn't guarantee high diversity at others

Example 1.1: Biodiversity across scales

Consider a mountain ecosystem spanning 10,000 hectares:

Ecosystem Diversity (E): | Ecosystem Type | Area (ha) | Proportion | |——————————-| ———————|——————| | Subalpine forest | 4,000 | 0.40 | | Alpine meadow | 3,000 | 0.30 | | Alpine tundra | 2,000 | 0.20 | | Rock/ice | 1,000 | 0.10 |

Shannon index: $H_E = -\Sigma\ p_i\ \ln(p_i) = 1.28$

Species Diversity (S) in subalpine forest: | Species | Count | Proportion | |——————|————-| ——————| | Lodgepole pine | 500 | 0.50 | | Engelmann spruce | 300 | 0.30 | | Subalpine fir | 150 | 0.15 | | Quaking aspen | 50 | 0.05 |

Shannon index: $H_S = 1.15$

Genetic Diversity (G) in lodgepole pine: - 10 microsatellite loci analyzed - Average expected heterozygosity: $H_e = 0.65$ - This indicates moderate genetic diversity

Integrated Assessment: - E = 1.28 (moderate ecosystem diversity) - S = 1.15 (moderate species diversity) - G = 0.65 (moderate genetic diversity) - **Total biodiversity:** B = (0.65, 1.15, 1.28)

Example 1.2: Genetic diversity in a crop species

Rice (*Oryza sativa*) genetic diversity assessment:

Traditional Varieties (Landraces): - Number of varieties: 100,000+ - Genetic diversity (H_e): 0.75 - Traits: Drought tolerance, flood tolerance, pest resistance, nutritional quality

Modern Cultivars: - Number of varieties: ~1,000 - Genetic diversity (H_e): 0.35 - Traits: High yield, uniform maturity, disease resistance (specific)

Implications: - Modern breeding has increased yield but reduced genetic diversity - Loss of genetic diversity = loss of adaptive potential - Climate change requires diverse genetic resources - **Conservation strategy:** Maintain gene banks with traditional varieties

Example 1.3: Ecosystem diversity in a landscape

A 50,000-hectare agricultural landscape:

Ecosystem Type	Area (ha)	Services Provided
Cropland	35,000	Food production
Grassland	8,000	Livestock, carbon storage
Forest	5,000	Timber, water regulation, biodiversity
Wetland	1,500	Water purification, flood control
Urban	500	Human habitat

Ecosystem diversity: $H_E = 1.18$

Relationship to services: - Higher E →more diverse services - Forest and wetland (10% area) provide disproportionate regulating services - **Management implication:** Protect small but functionally important ecosystems

Example 1.4: Coral reef biodiversity hierarchy

A coral reef system (1 km²):

Genetic Level: - Coral species: Acropora cervicornis - Genetic diversity: $H_e = 0.45$ (low, due to asexual reproduction) - Implication: Low resilience to temperature stress

Species Level: - Coral species: 50 - Fish species: 500 - Total species: 1,000+ - Shannon index: $H_S = 4.2$ (very high)

Ecosystem Level: - Reef crest, reef slope, lagoon, seagrass beds - $H_E = 1.39$ (moderate)

Assessment: High species diversity but low genetic diversity in key species creates vulnerability.

Example 1.5: Biodiversity loss across levels

Historical change in a temperate forest (1900-2020):

Year	G (avg	S (species richness)	E (ecosystem types)

	H_e)		
1900	0.70	120	8
1950	0.65	100	6
2000	0.55	80	4
2020	0.50	70	4

Trends: - Genetic diversity: 29% decline - Species diversity: 42% decline - Ecosystem diversity: 50% decline - **Conclusion:** Loss at all three levels, with ecosystem diversity most affected

Problem 1.1: Calculating biodiversity at different levels

Given data from two forest plots:

Plot A: | Species | Count | |————–|———-| | Oak | 50 | | Maple | 30 | | Birch | 15 | | Pine | 5 |

Plot B: | Species | Count | |————–|———-| | Oak | 25 | | Maple | 25 | | Birch | 25 | | Pine | 25 |

Calculate: a) Species richness for each plot b) Shannon diversity index for each plot c) Simpson's diversity index for each plot d) Which plot has higher species diversity? Explain.

Problem 1.2: Genetic diversity assessment

For a population of a rare plant species, genetic data shows three alleles with frequencies: - Allele A: 0.5 - Allele B: 0.3 - Allele C: 0.2

Calculate: a) Expected heterozygosity (He = $1 - \Sigma p_i^2$) b) Shannon diversity index for genetic diversity c) What does this value tell you about the population's resilience? d) If allele A frequency increases to 0.8 (and B=0.15, C=0.05), how does genetic diversity change?

Problem 1.3: Hierarchical biodiversity assessment

A national park contains: - 3 major ecosystem types (forest, grassland, wetland) - 200 plant species total - Average genetic diversity (H_e) across 10 focal species: 0.60

a) Calculate ecosystem diversity (assuming equal areas)

b) If species are distributed as: Forest (120 spp), Grassland (60 spp), Wetland (20 spp), calculate species diversity for each ecosystem

c) Create a biodiversity profile: B = (G, S, E)

d) Which level shows the lowest diversity? What are the conservation implications?

Problem 1.4: Biodiversity and ecosystem function

Research shows that ecosystem productivity increases with species diversity following:

$$Productivity = P_{max} \times \left(1 - e^{-k \times S}\right)$$

where P_{max} = 1000 g/m²/year, k = 0.05, S = species richness

e) Calculate productivity for S = 1, 10, 50, 100 species

f) At what species richness is productivity 90% of maximum?

g) What does this tell you about the relationship between biodiversity and ecosystem function?

Problem 1.5: Integrating three levels

You are managing a 1,000-hectare conservation area with limited budget. You can invest in: - Option A: Genetic conservation (seed banking) - protects G - Option B: Species conservation (habitat protection) - protects S - Option C: Ecosystem conservation (landscape restoration) - protects E

Current status: G = 0.4 (low), S = 0.7 (moderate), E = 0.9 (high)

h) Which level is most threatened?

i) Which option should you prioritize? Justify your answer.

j) How would your answer change if all three levels were equally low?

1.2 Ecosystem Services Framework

Ecosystem services are the many and varied benefits that humans freely gain from the natural environment and from properly-functioning ecosystems. These services are often categorized to facilitate their valuation and management.

Theorem 1.2: CICES Classification System

The Common International Classification of Ecosystem Services (CICES) provides a hierarchical framework for classifying ecosystem services into three main sections, with supporting services excluded to avoid double counting.

Formal Definition:

Let ES be the set of all ecosystem services. CICES defines a partition of ES:

$$ES = P \cup R \cup C$$

where: - P = Provisioning services (material and energy outputs) - R = Regulating & Maintenance services (regulation of environmental conditions) - C = Cultural services (non-material benefits) - P ∩ R = ∅, P ∩ C = ∅, R ∩ C = ∅ (mutually exclusive)

Exclusion of Supporting Services:

Let SS = {nutrient cycling, soil formation, primary production, …} be supporting services.

Rule: SS ∩ ES = ∅

Rationale: Supporting services are intermediate processes that enable final services. Including them would lead to double counting.

Proof of Double Counting Prevention:

Proposition: Excluding supporting services prevents double counting

Proof: - Let s ∈ SS be a supporting service (e.g., nutrient cycling) - Let f ∈ ES be a final service (e.g., crop production) - The value of f already incorporates the contribution of s - If we value both s and f, we count the same benefit twice - By construction, $SS \cap ES = \varnothing$ ensures each benefit is counted exactly once - Therefore, double counting is prevented ∎

Hierarchical Structure:

CICES uses five levels: 1. Section (3 categories: P, R, C) 2. Division (~11 categories) 3. Group (~30 categories) 4. Class (~100+ categories) 5. Class Type (~200+ categories)

Example Hierarchy:

```
Section: Provisioning (P)
  └── Division: Nutrition
      └── Group: Cultivated crops
          └── Class: Cereals
              └── Class Type: Wheat
```

Properties:

- **Completeness:** Every ecosystem service can be classified
- **Mutual Exclusivity:** No service belongs to multiple categories at the same level
- **Consistency:** Classification is independent of assessor
- **Scalability:** Applicable from local to global scales

Example 1.6: Mapping ecosystem services in a watershed

A 10,000-hectare watershed provides multiple services:

Provisioning Services (P): | Service | Quantification | Annual Value | |————–|——————-|—————–| | Freshwater supply | 50 million m^3/year | \$25 million | | Fish harvest | 500 tonnes/year | \$5 million | | Timber | 10,000 m^3/year | \$1.5 million |

Regulating & Maintenance Services (R): | Service | Quantification | Annual Value | |————–|——————-|—————–| | Water purification | 5,000 kg N removed/year | \$25,000 | | Flood control | Peak flow reduction 30% | \$10 million | | Carbon sequestration | 50,000 tCO_2/year | \$2.5 million |

Cultural Services (C): | Service | Quantification | Annual Value | |————|——————–| ——————–| | Recreation | 100,000 visits/year | $5 million | | Aesthetic value | Property premium | $20 million (capitalized) |

Total Annual Flow Value: $44 million/year

Example 1.7: Cultural ecosystem services of a sacred grove

A 50-hectare sacred grove in India:

Cultural Services: - Spiritual enrichment: Used by 5,000 people annually for religious ceremonies - Cultural heritage: 500-year-old tradition - Education: 20 school groups visit annually - Sense of place: Community identity

Co-benefits: - High biodiversity: 200 plant species, 50 bird species - Carbon storage: 5,000 tC - Water regulation: Protects spring

Valuation Challenge: - Cultural services difficult to monetize - Existence value likely exceeds use value - **Approach:** Multi-criteria assessment combining monetary and non-monetary values

Example 1.8: Urban ecosystem services

A 100-hectare urban park:

Section	Service	Quantification	Annual Value
P	Urban agriculture	50 tonnes vegetables	$50,000
R	Air quality	500 kg PM2.5 removed	$500,000
R	Urban cooling	2°C temperature reduction	$1 million
R	Stormwater management	50,000 m^3 infiltration	$250,000
C	Recreation	200,000 visits	$10 million
C	Mental health	Stress reduction	$5 million

Total: $16.8 million/year for 100 ha = $168,000/ha/year

Example 1.9: Trade-offs between services

A 1,000-hectare coastal area, two management scenarios:

Scenario A: Intensive aquaculture - P (fish production): +$10 million/year - R (water quality): -$2 million/year (degradation) - C (recreation): -$3 million/year (loss) - **Net:** +$5 million/year

Scenario B: Mangrove conservation - P (fish production): +$2 million/year (wild fishery) - R (coastal protection): +$5 million/year - R (carbon sequestration): +$1 million/year - C (tourism): +$4 million/year - **Net:** +$12 million/year

Conclusion: Conservation provides higher total value

Example 1.10: Avoiding double counting

An ecosystem assessment includes:

Service	Type	Value	Include?
Timber production	P	$1M	✓ Yes (final service)
Carbon sequestration	R	$0.5 M	✓ Yes (final service)
Soil formation	SS	?	✗ No (supporting service)
Nutrient cycling	SS	?	✗ No (supporting service)
Primary production	SS	?	✗ No (supporting service)

Correct Total: $1.5M (only final services)

Problem 1.6: Service classification exercise

For a coastal mangrove ecosystem (500 hectares), identify and classify at least five distinct ecosystem services using the CICES framework. For each service: a) Classify to the Class level (Section →Division →Group →Class) b) Describe the benefit to human well-being c) Suggest a quantification method d) Estimate the magnitude (with units)

Problem 1.7: Ecosystem service trade-offs

A government is considering a dam project:

With Dam: - P: Hydroelectric power = 100 MW capacity = \$50M/year - P: Irrigation water = 200M m³/year = \$20M/year - R: Flood control = \$5M/year - **Costs:** -P: Fish harvest = -\$10M/year, -C: Recreation = -\$15M/year, -R: Sediment transport = -\$5M/year

Without Dam: - P: Fish harvest = \$10M/year - C: Recreation = \$15M/year - R: Sediment transport = \$5M/year

k) Calculate net benefits for each scenario
l) Perform a multi-criteria analysis (create a scoring matrix)
m) What additional factors should be considered?
n) Make a recommendation with justification

Problem 1.8: Double counting identification

An ecosystem service assessment includes the following: 1. Crop production: \$1,000,000/year 2. Pollination service: \$200,000/year 3. Soil fertility maintenance: \$150,000/year 4. Nutrient cycling: \$100,000/year 5. Water purification: \$50,000/year

Which of these should be excluded to avoid double counting? Explain your reasoning using CICES principles.

Problem 1.9: Service bundles and trade-offs

A 1,000-hectare landscape can be managed in three ways:

Management	P (¿ *year* ¿∨*R* ¿ /year)	C (\$/year)	Total	
Intensive agriculture	500,000	50,000	10,000	560,000
Mixed use	300,000	200,000	100,000	600,000
Conservation	50,000	400,000	300,000	750,000

a) Which management provides the highest total value?

b) Which provides the most balanced service bundle?

c) If society values R services at 1.5× and C services at 2× (due to scarcity), recalculate total values

d) How does this change your recommendation?

Problem 1.10: Temporal dynamics of services

A reforestation project changes service provision over time:

Year	P (timber)	R (carbon)	C (recreation)	Total
0	0	0	0	0
10	10,000	50,000	20,000	80,000
20	50,000	100,000	50,000	200,000
30	100,000	150,000	80,000	330,000

a) Calculate the present value of each service stream (discount rate 3%)

b) Which service has the highest present value?

c) How does the discount rate affect the relative importance of services?

1.3 The Business Case for Biodiversity Accounting

The degradation of biodiversity and ecosystems poses significant risks to businesses and the economy. These risks can be physical, transitional, or systemic. Conversely, the conservation and sustainable use of biodiversity can create new business opportunities.

Theorem 1.3: Nature-Related Financial Risk

Nature-related financial risks can be formally modeled as a function of a company's dependencies and impacts on nature, mediated by environmental state and societal responses.

Formal Definition:

Let R_n be the nature-related financial risk for an organization. Then:

$$R_n = f(D, I, S_e, S_r)$$

where: - D = Dependencies on nature (vector of ecosystem services used) - I = Impacts on nature (vector of pressures on ecosystems) - S_e = State of the environment (ecosystem condition) - S_r = Societal responses (policy, regulation, consumer behavior)

Expanded Form:

$$R_n = R_{physical} + R_{transition} + R_{systemic}$$

1. **Physical Risk:**

$$R_{physical} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} D_i \times \Delta S_i \times V_i$$

where: - D_i = dependency on ecosystem service i (0-1 scale) - ΔS_i = change in provision of service i (%) - V_i = value of operations dependent on service i ($)

2. **Transition Risk:**

$$R_{transition} = \sum_{j=1}^{m} I_j \times P_j \times C_j$$

where: - I_j = impact on ecosystem j (magnitude) - P_j = probability of regulatory/reputational consequence - C_j = cost of consequence ($)

3. **Systemic Risk:**

$$R_{systemic} = \rho \times \sum_{k=1}^{l} S_k \times E_k$$

where: - ρ = correlation with broader economic system - S_k = severity of systemic event k - E_k = exposure to event k

Proof of Risk Additivity:

Proposition: Total risk is the sum of component risks (under independence)

Proof: - *Assume physical, transition, and systemic risks are independent* - *Expected value of total risk:* $E[R_n] = E[R_{physical}] + E[R_{transition}] + E[R_{systemic}]$ - *By linearity of expectation:* $E[R_n] = E[R_{physical} + R_{transition} + R_{systemic}]$ - *Therefore,* $R_n = R_{physical} + R_{transition} + R_{systemic}$ ∎

Note: In reality, risks may be correlated, requiring more complex modeling.

Risk Transmission Pathways:

- **Dependency → Physical Risk:**
  1. Ecosystem degradation →Service disruption →Operational impact
- **Impact → Transition Risk:**
  2. Negative impact →Regulation/reputation damage →Financial consequence
- **Systemic → Cascade:**
  3. Ecosystem collapse →Economic disruption →Widespread losses

Example 1.11: Financial materiality assessment

A food and beverage company (annual revenue $10 billion):

Dependencies:

Service	Dependency (0-1)	Exposed Revenue ($B)	Risk Score
Freshwater	0.9	5	High
Pollination	0.7	3	High
Climate regulation	0.5	2	Medium
Pest control	0.4	1	Medium

Physical Risk Calculation: - Freshwater: 0.9 × 20% decline × $5B = $900M potential loss - Pollination: 0.7 × 30% decline × $3B = $630M potential loss - **Total Physical Risk:** $1.53B (15.3% of revenue)

Materiality Threshold: Risks >5% of revenue are financially material **Conclusion:** Nature-related risks are highly material

Example 1.12: Mining company risk assessment

A mining company:

Physical Risks: - Water scarcity: $50M/year (high dependency on freshwater) - Extreme weather: $20M/year (disruption to operations)

Transition Risks: - Biodiversity regulations: $100M (compliance costs) - Reputational damage: $200M (loss of social license) - Carbon pricing: $80M/year (Scope 1&2 emissions)

Total Risk Exposure: $450M + ongoing costs

Risk Mitigation: - Invest $50M in water efficiency →reduce physical risk by 50% - Invest $100M in biodiversity offsets →reduce transition risk by 60% - **Net benefit:** $225M - $150M = $75M

Example 1.13: Agricultural sector dependencies

Global agriculture dependencies:

Service	Dependency	Exposed Value	Decline Scenario	Potential Loss
Pollination	0.35	$577B	50% decline	$101B
Water regulation	0.80	$3,000B	20% decline	$480B
Soil quality	0.90	$3,000B	10% decline	$270B
Climate regulation	0.60	$3,000B	5% decline	$90B

Total Potential Loss: $941B (31% of exposed value)

Example 1.14: Financial services sector exposure

A bank with $100B loan portfolio:

Sector Exposure: | Sector | Loans ($B) | Nature Dependency | Risk Rating | |———–|———————|—————————-|———————-| | Agriculture | 20 | High | High | | Manufacturing | 30 | Medium | Medium | | Real estate | 25 | Low | Low | | Services | 25 | Low | Low |

Credit Risk Adjustment: - High dependency sectors: +0.5% default probability - **Additional expected loss:** $20B × 0.5% = $100M

Example 1.15: Pharmaceutical company opportunities

A pharmaceutical company:

Nature Dependencies: - 50% of drugs derived from natural products - Biodiversity = source of future medicines

Business Case for Conservation: - Invest \$10M/year in bioprospecting partnerships - Expected value of new drug discovery: \$500M (NPV) - **ROI:** 50× over 20 years

Risk of Biodiversity Loss: - Loss of potential medicines: \$1B+ (option value)

Problem 1.11: Risk quantification

For a hypothetical mining company with \$5B annual revenue:

Physical Risks: - Water scarcity (probability 30%, impact \$200M) - Extreme weather (probability 20%, impact \$100M)

Transition Risks: - New biodiversity regulations (probability 60%, impact \$150M) - Reputational damage (probability 40%, impact \$300M)

Calculate: a) Expected value of each risk b) Total expected loss c) As percentage of revenue d) Is this financially material (>5% threshold)?

Problem 1.12: Dependency mapping

A beverage company produces soft drinks. Map its dependencies on ecosystem services: a) Identify at least 5 ecosystem services the company depends on b) Rate dependency for each (Low/Medium/High) c) Estimate the proportion of revenue exposed to each dependency d) Calculate a dependency risk score e) Which dependencies are most critical?

Problem 1.13: Scenario analysis

A coastal resort (annual revenue \$50M) faces climate change risks:

Scenario A: 2°C warming - Sea level rise: 0.5m by 2050 - Beach erosion: 20% loss - Revenue impact: -10%

Scenario B: 4°C warming - Sea level rise: 1.0m by 2050 - Beach erosion: 50% loss - Revenue impact: -40%

a) Calculate expected revenue under each scenario (assume equal probability)

b) Calculate the present value of losses (discount rate 5%, time horizon 30 years)

c) What is the maximum the resort should invest in adaptation?

Problem 1.14: Opportunity identification

A technology company wants to develop nature-based solutions. Identify: a) Three business opportunities related to biodiversity conservation b) Market size for each opportunity c) Required investment d) Expected ROI e) Barriers to entry

Problem 1.15: Integrated risk assessment

A diversified conglomerate has operations in: - Agriculture (30% of revenue) - Manufacturing (40% of revenue) - Services (30% of revenue)

Create an integrated nature-related risk assessment: a) Identify key dependencies and impacts for each sector b) Quantify physical and transition risks c) Calculate portfolio-level risk d) Recommend risk mitigation strategies e) Estimate cost of mitigation vs. cost of inaction

1.4 Historical Development of Biodiversity Accounting

The field of biodiversity accounting has evolved from early ecological studies to the current focus on integrated environmental-economic accounting.

Key Milestones:

Year	Development	Significance
1859	Darwin's *Origin of Species*	Foundation of evolutionary biology
1967	MacArthur & Wilson: Island Biogeography	Species-area relationship
1992	Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD)	International biodiversity policy
2005	Millennium Ecosystem Assessment	Ecosystem services framework

2012	SEEA Experimental Ecosystem Accounting	Standardized accounting methods
2021	SEEA Ecosystem Accounting (final)	International statistical standard
2023	TNFD Framework	Nature-related financial disclosures

Evolution of Concepts:

- **1960s-1970s:** Focus on species richness and conservation
- **1980s-1990s:** Emergence of ecosystem services concept
- **2000s-2010s:** Development of valuation methods and accounting frameworks
- **2020s-present:** Integration with financial reporting and corporate disclosure

1.5 Supplementary Problems

- Discuss the limitations of using a single metric, such as species richness, to represent overall biodiversity. Provide examples where species richness is high but other dimensions of biodiversity are low.
- Compare and contrast the CICES and Millennium Ecosystem Assessment (MA) frameworks for classifying ecosystem services. What are the main differences in how they treat supporting services?
- Explain the concept of "double materiality" in the context of biodiversity-related financial disclosures. How does this differ from traditional financial materiality?
- Describe the key components of the SEEA Ecosystem Accounting framework. How does it link ecosystem extent, condition, and services to economic accounts?
- How can the concept of "nature-based solutions" contribute to both biodiversity conservation and climate change mitigation? Provide three specific examples with quantified benefits.

1.6 References

[1] Millennium Ecosystem Assessment. (2005). *Ecosystems and Human Well-being: Synthesis*. Island Press.

[2] Haines-Young, R., & Potschin, M. (2018). *Common International Classification of Ecosystem Services (CICES) V5.1*. European Environment Agency.

[3] Taskforce on Nature-related Financial Disclosures (TNFD). (2023). *The TNFD Framework*. TNFD.

[4] United Nations. (2021). *System of Environmental-Economic Accounting——Ecosystem Accounting (SEEA EA)*. United Nations.

[5] Cohen-Shacham, E., Walters, G., Janzen, C., & Maginnis, S. (Eds.). (2016). *Nature-based solutions to address global societal challenges*. IUCN.

[6] Cardinale, B. J., et al. (2012). Biodiversity loss and its impact on humanity. *Nature*, 486(7401), 59-67.

[7] Dasgupta, P. (2021). *The Economics of Biodiversity: The Dasgupta Review*. HM Treasury.

[8] IPBES. (2019). *Global assessment report on biodiversity and ecosystem services*. IPBES secretariat, Bonn, Germany.

Chapter 2: Mathematical Foundations for Biodiversity Metrics

2.1 Species Richness

Species richness (S) is the simplest measure of biodiversity, representing the total number of species in a given area, community, or ecosystem. While seemingly straightforward, its measurement is highly dependent on sampling effort.

Theorem 2.1: Rarefaction and Extrapolation

To compare species richness between two samples of different sizes, rarefaction and extrapolation techniques are used. Rarefaction estimates the expected number of species in a smaller sample, while extrapolation predicts the number of species in a larger sample. The expected number of species $E[S_n]$ in a subsample of size n from a larger sample of size N is given by:

$$E\left[S_n\right]=\sum_{i=1}^{S_{obs}}\left[1-\frac{\binom{N-N_i}{n}}{\binom{N}{n}}\right]$$

$\binom{N}{n}$where: - S_{obs} is the observed number of species in the full sample - N is the total number of individuals in the full sample - N_i is the number of individuals of species i - n is the subsample size (where n $\leq$ N) - denotes the binomial coefficient "N choose n"

Proof:

The rarefaction formula is derived from the hypergeometric distribution. For each species i, the probability that it is absent from a random subsample of size n is the probability that all n individuals are drawn from the N - N_i individuals that are not of species i:

$$P\left(\text{species } i \text{ absent}\right)=\frac{\binom{N-N_i}{n}}{\binom{N}{n}}$$

Therefore, the probability that species i is **present** in the subsample is:

$$P(\text{species } i \text{ present}) = 1 - \frac{\binom{N-N_i}{n}}{\binom{N}{n}}$$

Since the expected number of species is the sum of the probabilities that each species is present, we have:

$$E[S_n] = \sum_{i=1}^{S_{obs}} P(\text{species } i \text{ present}) = \sum_{i=1}^{S_{obs}} \left[1 - \frac{\binom{N-N_i}{n}}{\binom{N}{n}} \right]$$

Special Cases:

- When n = N (no rarefaction), $E[S_n] = S_{obs}$, as expected.
- When n = 1 (single individual), $E[S_1] = 1$, as only one species can be represented.
- For rare species with small N_i, the probability of inclusion decreases rapidly as n decreases.

Computational Note:

For large N, the binomial coefficients can be computationally challenging. The formula can be rewritten using factorials:

$$\frac{\binom{N-N_i}{n}}{\binom{N}{n}} = \frac{(N-N_i)! \cdot n! \cdot (N-n)!}{n! \cdot (N-N_i-n)! \cdot N!} = \frac{\prod_{j=0}^{n-1} (\text{¿} N - N_i - j)}{\prod_{j=0}^{n-1} (\text{¿} N - j) \text{¿}} \text{¿}$$

This product form is more numerically stable for computation. ∎

Example 2.1: Sample-based richness estimation

In a forest plot, a sample of 100 trees yields 15 different species. A second plot, where 200 trees are sampled, yields 20 species. To compare their richness, we can rarefy the second sample to 100 individuals and calculate the expected number of species. This allows for a more direct comparison of species density.

Example 2.2: Richness in coral reefs

Two coral reef sites are surveyed. Site A is surveyed for 1 hour, and 50 fish species are recorded. Site B is surveyed for 3 hours, and 75 fish species are recorded. It is incorrect to conclude that Site B is richer than Site A. Rarefaction curves must be constructed to compare the species richness at a standardized level of sampling effort (e.g., 1 hour of survey time).

Example 2.3: Richness in polluted vs. unpolluted rivers

An ecologist samples macroinvertebrates in two rivers. The unpolluted river yields 30 species from a sample of 500 individuals. The polluted river yields only 10 species from a sample of 1000 individuals. Even without rarefaction, the large difference in species numbers relative to the sample size strongly suggests that the unpolluted river has higher species richness.

Problem 2.1: Rarefaction curves

Given species abundance data from two different insect communities, construct and plot rarefaction curves for both communities. Use the curves to compare their species richness and discuss the implications of sampling effort.

Problem 2.2: Interpreting rarefaction curve crossing

Two rarefaction curves cross. What does this imply about the species richness and evenness of the two communities? Which community is more diverse? Explain your reasoning.

Problem 2.3: Designing a sampling strategy

You are tasked with assessing the plant species richness of a national park. The park contains several different habitat types (forest, grassland, wetland). Design a sampling strategy that will provide an accurate estimate of the total species richness of the park. How would you allocate your sampling effort among the different habitat types?

2.2 Shannon Diversity Index

The Shannon diversity index (H) is a widely used metric that accounts for both the number of species (richness) and their relative abundance (evenness). It is derived from information theory and measures the uncertainty in predicting the species identity of an individual taken at random from the community.

Theorem 2.2: Shannon Entropy and Information Theory

The Shannon diversity index (also called Shannon-Wiener index or Shannon entropy) is calculated as:

$$H' = -\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i \ln(p_i)$$

$\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i = 1$where: - S is the total number of species in the community - p_i is the proportion of individuals belonging to the i-th species (where) - ln denotes the natural logarithm (base e)

The value of H' ranges from 0 (for a community with a single species) to ln(S) (for a community where all species are equally abundant).

Proof:

Part 1: Minimum Value (H' = 0)

The Shannon index reaches its minimum when the community has minimal uncertainty, which occurs when all individuals belong to a single species. In this case: - $p_1 = 1$ (one species has all individuals) - $p_i = 0$ for all $i \neq 1$

Since $\lim_{p \to 0^{+¿}} p \ln(p) = 0¿$ (by L'Hôpital's rule), we have:

$$H' = -[1 \cdot \ln(1) + 0 + 0 + \ldots + 0] = -[0] = 0$$

Part 2: Maximum Value (H' = ln(S))

To find the maximum value of H', we use the method of Lagrange multipliers to maximize H' subject to the constraint $\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i = 1$.

Define the Lagrangian:

$$L = -\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i \ln(p_i) + \lambda \left(\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i - 1 \right)$$

Taking the partial derivative with respect to p_j and setting it to zero:

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial p_j} = -\ln(p_j) - 1 + \lambda = 0$$

This gives us:

$$\ln(p_j) = \lambda - 1$$

$\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i = 1$Since this equation is the same for all j, all p_j must be equal. Given the constraint , we have:

$$p_i = \frac{1}{S} \text{ for all } i$$

Substituting this into the Shannon formula:

$$H'_{max} = -\sum_{i=1}^{S} \frac{1}{S} \ln\left(\frac{1}{S}\right) = -S \cdot \frac{1}{S} \cdot \ln\left(\frac{1}{S}\right)$$

$$H'_{max} = -\ln\left(\frac{1}{S}\right) = -\ln(S^{-1}) = -(-1)\ln(S) = \ln(S)$$

Part 3: Verification of Concavity

To confirm this is a maximum (not a minimum), we check the second derivative:

$$\frac{\partial^2 L}{\partial p_j^2} = \frac{-1}{p_j} < 0$$

Since the second derivative is negative for all $p_j > 0$, the Shannon index is a strictly concave function, confirming that equal proportions yield the maximum value. ∎

Information-Theoretic Interpretation:

The Shannon index can be interpreted as the average amount of "information" or "surprise" in predicting the species identity of a randomly selected individual. When all species are equally abundant, the uncertainty is maximized, yielding the highest H' value. When one species dominates, the uncertainty is low, yielding a low H' value.

Properties:

- **Non-negativity:** H' ≥ 0 for all valid probability distributions
- **Continuity: H' is a continuous function of the proportions p_i**
- **Symmetry:** H' is invariant under permutations of species labels
- **Additivity:** For independent communities, $H'_{total} = H'_A + H'_B$
- **Concavity:** H' is a strictly concave function, meaning that averaging probability distributions increases diversity

Alternative Bases:

While natural logarithm (ln) is standard in ecology, other bases can be used: - **Base 2** ($\log_2$): Measures information in "bits" - **Base 10** ($\log_{10}$): Measures information in "digits" or "decits" - **Base e** (ln): Measures information in "nats" (natural units)

The choice of base affects the numerical value but not the relative ordering or interpretation:

$$H'_{base\,b} = \frac{H'_{base\,e}}{\ln(b)}$$

Relationship to Other Indices:

The Shannon index is related to the exponential Shannon entropy (also called the "effective number of species" or Hill number of order 1):

$$\square^1 D = \exp(H') = \exp\left(-\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i \ln(p_i)\right)$$

This transformation converts H’ to the same units as species richness, making it more interpretable.
∎

Example 2.4: Computing Shannon index

Consider a community with three species with proportions $p1 = 0.5$, $p2 = 0.3$, and $p3 = 0.2$. The Shannon diversity index would be:

$$H = - (0.5 * \ln(0.5) + 0.3 * \ln(0.3) + 0.2 * \ln(0.2))$$

Example 2.5: Shannon diversity in a tropical rainforest

A tropical rainforest typically has high species richness and high evenness, with no single species being overly dominant. This results in a high Shannon diversity index. For example, a community of 100 species with equal abundance would have $H = \ln(100)$.

Example 2.6: Impact of an invasive species

An invasive plant species is introduced into a grassland ecosystem. The invasive species outcompetes the native species and becomes dominant. This leads to a decrease in both species richness and evenness, resulting in a lower Shannon diversity index.

Problem 2.4: Sensitivity analysis

Calculate the Shannon diversity index for a community of 5 species with varying levels of evenness (e.g., from highly skewed to perfectly even). Analyze how the index value changes and discuss its sensitivity to evenness.

Problem 2.5: Calculating Shannon diversity from a new dataset

You have collected the following data on the abundance of four bird species in a park: Species A: 50, Species B: 25, Species C: 15, Species D: 10. Calculate the Shannon diversity index for this bird community.

Problem 2.6: Proving H is maximal

Prove that the Shannon diversity index (H) is maximal when all species are equally abundant (i.e., $p_i = 1/S$ for all i).

2.3 Simpson Diversity Index

The Simpson diversity index (D) is another popular metric that measures the probability that two individuals randomly selected from a sample will belong to the same species. It is more weighted towards the abundance of the most common species.

Theorem 2.3: Probability-Based Diversity (Simpson's Index)

The Simpson index is calculated as:

$$D = \sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i^2$$

$\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i = 1$where: - S is the total number of species in the community - p_i is the proportion of individuals belonging to the i-th species (where)

Since D is a measure of **dominance** (the probability that two randomly selected individuals belong to the same species), it is often presented as its **complement (1-D)** or **reciprocal (1/D)** to represent diversity.

Proof of Probabilistic Interpretation:

Consider randomly selecting two individuals from a community (with replacement). The probability that both individuals belong to species i is pi × pi = p_i^2. Since the selections can result in any of the S species, the total probability that both individuals belong to the same species is:

$$D = \sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i^2$$

This is the Simpson index, which measures the probability of **intraspecific encounter** (both individuals from the same species).

Alternatively, for sampling without replacement from a finite community of N individuals with N_i individuals of species i, the Simpson index is:

$$D=\sum_{i=1}^{S} \frac{N_i(N_i-1)}{N(N-1)}$$

For large N, this converges to the formula with proportions. ∎

Proof of Range:

Part 1: Minimum Value (D = 1/S)

The Simpson index is minimized when diversity is maximized, which occurs when all species are equally abundant (p_i = 1/S for all i):

$$D_{min}=\sum_{i=1}^{S} \left(\frac{1}{S}\right)^2 = S \cdot \frac{1}{S^2} = \frac{1}{S}$$

Part 2: Maximum Value (D = 1)

The Simpson index is maximized when dominance is maximized, which occurs when one species comprises the entire community (p_1 = 1, p_i = 0 for i ≠ 1):

$$D_{max}=1^2+0^2+\ldots+0^2=1$$

Part 3: Proof that D is Minimized at Equal Abundances

To prove that D is minimized when all p_i are equal, we use the method of Lagrange multipliers. We want to minimize:

$$f(p_1,\ldots,p_S)=\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i^2$$

subject to the constraint:

$$g(p_1,\ldots,p_S)=\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i-1=0$$

The Lagrangian is:

$$L = \sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i^2 + \lambda \left(\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i - 1 \right)$$

Taking the partial derivative with respect to p_j:

$$\frac{\partial L}{\partial p_j} = 2 p_j + \lambda = 0$$

This gives us:

$$p_j = \frac{-\lambda}{2}$$

$\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i = 1$Since this is the same for all j, all p_j must be equal. Given the constraint :

$$p_i = \frac{1}{S} \text{ for all } i$$

To verify this is a minimum (not a maximum), we check the second derivative:

$$\frac{\partial^2 L}{\partial p_j^2} = 2 > 0$$

Since the second derivative is positive, D is a convex function, confirming that equal proportions yield the minimum value. ∎

Alternative Formulations:

- **Gini-Simpson Index (1 - D):** Represents the probability that two randomly selected individuals belong to **different** species (probability of interspecific encounter):

$$\lambda = 1 - D = 1 - \sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i^2$$

    4. Range: [0, (S-1)/S]
    5. Minimum: 0 (one species)
    6. Maximum: (S-1)/S (all species equally abundant)

- **Inverse Simpson Index (1/D):** Also called “Simpson’s Diversity Index” or “effective number of species”:

$$\square^{2}D = \frac{1}{D} = \frac{1}{\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i^2}$$

7. Range: [1, S]
8. Minimum: 1 (one species)
9. Maximum: S (all species equally abundant)
10. Interpretation: The number of equally abundant species needed to produce the observed value of D

Properties:

- **Dominance Weighting:** Simpson's index is more sensitive to abundant species than Shannon's index. It gives more weight to common species.
- **Monotonicity:** As evenness increases (holding S constant), D decreases (dominance decreases).
- **Relationship to Hill Numbers:** The inverse Simpson index (1/D) is the Hill number of order 2:

$$\square^{2}D = \left(\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i^2\right)^{-1}$$

- **Additivity:** Unlike Shannon index, Simpson's index is **not** additive for independent communities.
- **Sensitivity:** Simpson's index is less sensitive to rare species than Shannon's index, making it more robust to sampling errors for rare species.

Comparison with Shannon Index:

Property	Shannon (H')	Simpson (D)
Weighting	Balanced	Favors abundant species
Sensitivity to rare species	High	Low
Range	[0, ln(S)]	[1/S, 1]
Interpretation	Information/uncertainty	Probability of same species

Additivity	Yes	No
Computation	Requires logarithm	Simple squares

Special Cases:

- **Two species with equal abundance ($p_1 = p_2 = 0.5$):**
  11. $D = 0.5^2 + 0.5^2 = 0.5$
  12. $1\text{-}D = 0.5$
  13. $1/D = 2$
- **Two species with unequal abundance ($p_1 = 0.9$, $p_2 = 0.1$):**
  14. $D = 0.9^2 + 0.1^2 = 0.82$
  15. $1\text{-}D = 0.18$
  16. $1/D \approx 1.22$
- **Ten species with equal abundance ($p_i = 0.1$ for all i):**
  17. $D = 10 \times 0.1^2 = 0.1$
  18. $1\text{-}D = 0.9$
  19. $1/D = 10$

Relationship to Evenness:

Simpson's index can be used to calculate **Simpson's evenness:**

$$E_D = \frac{\frac{1}{D}}{S} = \frac{1}{D \cdot S}$$

This ranges from 1/S (minimum evenness, one species dominates) to 1 (maximum evenness, all species equally abundant).

Practical Considerations:

5. **Sample size:** For small samples, use the unbiased estimator (sampling without replacement formula)
6. **Rare species:** Simpson's index is less affected by rare species, which may be undersampled

7. **Interpretation:** Lower D values indicate higher diversity; higher D values indicate higher dominance
8. **Reporting:** Specify whether reporting D, 1-D, or 1/D to avoid confusion ∎

Example 2.7: Simpson's dominance and diversity

For the same community with proportions p1 = 0.5, p2 = 0.3, and p3 = 0.2, the Simpson index is:

D = 0.5^2 + 0.3^2 + 0.2^2 = 0.25 + 0.09 + 0.04 = 0.38

The Simpson s diversity index would be 1 - D = 0.62.

Example 2.8: Simpson's index in agricultural landscapes

In an agricultural landscape dominated by a single crop species, the Simpson index will be high (close to 1), and the Simpson s diversity index will be low (close to 0). This reflects the low diversity of the system.

Example 2.9: Dominance in a single-species plantation

In a single-species tree plantation, the Simpson index will be 1, as $p_1 = 1$ and all other $p_i = 0$. This indicates complete dominance by one species.

Problem 2.7: Comparative analysis

Calculate both the Shannon and Simpson diversity indices for two different ecological communities. Compare the results and discuss which index might be more appropriate for different research questions or conservation goals.

Problem 2.8: Comparing Shannon and Simpson

For a community dominated by one species, which index (Shannon or Simpson) will show a greater decrease in diversity? Explain your answer.

Problem 2.9: Calculating Simpson

s index from raw count data

For the bird community in Problem 2.5 (Species A: 50, Species B: 25, Species C: 15, Species D: 10), calculate the Simpson index (D) and the Simpson s diversity index (1-D).

2.4 Hill Numbers and Unified Framework

Hill numbers (qD) provide a unified framework for measuring diversity that incorporates and generalizes many existing indices, including species richness, Shannon, and Simpson. They are defined as the effective number of species.

Theorem 2.4: Hill Numbers as Effective Number of Species

Hill numbers (also called effective number of species or true diversity) provide a unified framework for measuring biodiversity. They are calculated as:

For **q ≠ 1:**

$$□^q D = \left(\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i^q \right)^{\frac{1}{1-q}}$$

For **q = 1** (limiting case):

$$□^1 D = \exp\left(- \sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i \ln(p_i) \right) = \exp(H')$$

where: - q is the order of diversity (a parameter that determines the sensitivity to species abundances) - S is the total number of species - p_i is the proportion of individuals belonging to species i - H' is the Shannon diversity index

The parameter q determines how much weight is given to rare versus common species: - **q = 0:** All species weighted equally (richness) - **q → 1:** Intermediate weighting (Shannon-based) - **q = 2:** Common species weighted more heavily (Simpson-based) - **q → ∞:** Only the most abundant species matters

Proof of Special Cases:

Case 1: q = 0 (Species Richness)

When q = 0, the formula becomes:

$$\square^{0}D=\left(\sum_{i=1}^{S}p_i^{0}\right)^{\frac{1}{1-0}}=\left(\sum_{i=1}^{S}1\right)^{1}=S$$

Since $p_i^0 = 1$ for all i (assuming $p_i > 0$), the sum equals S, giving us species richness. ■

Case 2: q = 1 (Exponential of Shannon Index)

The case q = 1 requires taking the limit as q →1. We start with:

$$\square^{q}D=\left(\sum_{i=1}^{S}p_i^{q}\right)^{\frac{1}{1-q}}$$

Taking the natural logarithm:

$$\ln(\text{¿}^{q}D)=\frac{1}{1-q}\ln\left(\sum_{i=1}^{S}p_i^{q}\right)\text{¿}$$

As q →1, this becomes the indeterminate form 0/0. Applying L'Hôpital's rule, we differentiate the numerator and denominator with respect to q:

Numerator derivative:

$$\frac{d}{dq}\left[\ln\left(\sum_{i=1}^{S}p_i^{q}\right)\right]=\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{S}p_i^{q}\ln(p_i)}{\sum_{i=1}^{S}p_i^{q}}$$

Denominator derivative:

$$\frac{d}{dq}[1-q]=-1$$

Applying L'Hôpital's rule:

$$\lim_{q\to 1}\ln(\text{¿}^{q}D)=\lim_{q\to 1}\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{S}p_i^{q}\ln(p_i)}{\sum_{i=1}^{S}p_i^{q}}\cdot\frac{1}{-1}\text{¿}$$

At q = 1:

$$\ln({}^1D) = \frac{-\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i \ln(p_i)}{\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i} = -\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i \ln(p_i) = H'$$

Therefore:

$$^1D = \exp(H')$$

This is the exponential of the Shannon index. ∎

Case 3: q = 2 (Inverse Simpson Index)

When q = 2:

$$^2D = \left(\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i^2\right)^{\frac{1}{1-2}} = \left(\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i^2\right)^{-1} = \frac{1}{\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i^2} = \frac{1}{D}$$

This is the inverse Simpson index. ∎

Properties of Hill Numbers:

- **Units:** Hill numbers are expressed in units of "effective number of species," making them directly comparable to species richness.
- **Monotonicity:** For a given community, ^qD is a non-increasing function of q. That is:

$$^0D \geq {}^1D \geq {}^2D \geq \ldots \geq {}^\infty D$$

- **Replication Principle:** If N identical communities are pooled, the Hill number of the pooled community is N times the Hill number of a single community:

$$^qD_{pooled} = N \cdot {}^qD_{single}$$

- **Doubling Property:** If two equally diverse, completely distinct communities (no shared species) are combined, the Hill number doubles:

$$^qD_{combined} = 2 \cdot {}^qD_{individual}$$

- **Continuity: Hill numbers are continuous functions of both q and the abundance distribution p_i.**
- **Concavity:** For q ≥ 0, Hill numbers are concave functions of the abundance distribution.

Proof of Monotonicity (^qD decreases with q):

To prove that ^qD is non-increasing in q, we show that d(ln ^qD)/dq ≤ 0.

Starting with:

$$\ln(¿^q D) = \frac{1}{1-q} \ln\left(\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i^q\right) ¿$$

Taking the derivative with respect to q:

$$\frac{d}{dq}\ln(¿^q D) = \frac{d}{dq}\left[\frac{\ln\left(\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i^q\right)}{1-q}\right] ¿$$

Using the quotient rule and simplifying (detailed calculation omitted for brevity):

$$\frac{d}{dq}\ln(¿^q D) = \frac{1}{¿¿} ¿$$

This expression is non-positive for all q ≥ 0, proving that ^qD decreases (or stays constant) as q increases. The equality holds only when all species have equal abundance. ∎

Interpretation of Different Orders:

Order (q)	Name	Interpretation	Sensitivity
0	Species richness	Counts all species equally	Maximum sensitivity to rare species
0 < q < 1	Intermediate	Emphasizes rare species	High sensitivity to rare species
1	Shannon	Balanced weighting	Moderate sensitivity

	diversity		
$1 < q < 2$	Intermediate	Emphasizes common species	Low sensitivity to rare species
2	Simpson diversity	Probability-based	Minimum sensitivity to rare species
$q > 2$	Higher orders	Increasingly dominated by most abundant species	Very low sensitivity to rare species
∞	Berger-Parker	Only most abundant species	No sensitivity to other species

Diversity Profiles:

A **diversity profile** is a plot of ${}^qD$ versus q. It provides a complete picture of biodiversity across all possible weightings of species abundances.

Properties of diversity profiles: 1. The profile always starts at S (when $q = 0$) 2. The profile is non-increasing (monotonicity property) 3. Communities can be unambiguously ranked if their profiles do not cross 4. If profiles cross, the ranking depends on the choice of q

Example: Comparing Two Communities

Consider two communities: - Community A: 10 species with equal abundance ($p_i = 0.1$ for all i) - Community B: 10 species with unequal abundance ($p_1 = 0.55$, $p_2 = 0.15$, p_3-10 = 0.0375 each)

Calculations: - ${}^0D_A = 10$, ${}^0D_B = 10$ (same richness) - ${}^1D_A = \exp(\ln(10)) = 10$, ${}^1D_B \approx 4.7$ - ${}^2D_A = 10$, ${}^2D_B \approx 2.5$

Community A has higher diversity for all $q > 0$ because it has perfect evenness.

Relationship to Traditional Indices:

Hill numbers unify traditional diversity indices:

Traditional Index	Hill Number Equivalent

Species richness (S)	^0D
exp(Shannon index)	^1D
Inverse Simpson (1/D)	^2D
Inverse Berger-Parker	∞D

Advantages of Hill Numbers:

- **Intuitive units:** Expressed as “effective number of species”
- **Unified framework:** All diversity measures in one family
- **Mathematical properties:** Satisfy desirable mathematical properties (replication, doubling)
- **Comparability:** Can compare across different q values
- **Complete information:** Diversity profiles provide full picture

Practical Recommendations:

- **Report multiple orders:** Report ^0D, ^1D, and ^2D to capture different aspects of diversity
- **Use diversity profiles:** Plot ^qD vs. q for complete comparison
- **Choose q based on goals:**
    1. Conservation focus on rare species →use $q < 1$
    2. Ecosystem function focus on dominant species →use $q > 1$
    3. Balanced assessment →use $q = 1$
- **Interpret carefully:** Higher Hill numbers always mean higher diversity

Mathematical Note:

The limit as $q \to \infty$ gives the Berger-Parker index:

$$\square^{\infty} D = \lim_{q \to \infty} {}^{q}D = \frac{1}{\max_i (p_i)}$$

This is the inverse of the proportional abundance of the most abundant species. ∎

Example 2.10: Diversity profiles

A diversity profile is a plot of Hill numbers against the order of diversity (q). This profile provides a comprehensive view of the diversity of a community, showing how the effective number of species changes with the emphasis on rare or abundant species.

Example 2.11: Using diversity profiles to compare two communities

By plotting the diversity profiles of two communities on the same graph, we can visually compare their diversity. If the profile of community A is always above the profile of community B, then community A is unambiguously more diverse than community B.

Example 2.12: Hill numbers for a well-studied community

For the bird community in Problem 2.5, we can calculate the Hill numbers for q=0, 1, and 2 to get a complete picture of its diversity.

Problem 2.10: Hill number calculations

For a given species abundance dataset, calculate the Hill numbers for q=0, 1, and 2. Interpret the results and explain what each value represents in terms of the community s diversity.

Problem 2.11: Plotting a diversity profile

For the bird community in Problem 2.5, plot the diversity profile for a range of q values from 0 to 5. What does the shape of the curve tell you about the evenness of the community?

Problem 2.12: Showing qD for q=1

Show that as q approaches 1, the Hill number qD approaches the exponential of the Shannon index (exp(H)).

2.5 Evenness Indices

Evenness measures how similar the abundances of different species are in a community. It is a component of diversity that is distinct from richness.

Theorem 2.5: Pielou's Evenness

Pielou's evenness index (J') is one of the most common measures of evenness. It is calculated by dividing the Shannon diversity index by the maximum possible diversity for that community (which occurs when all species are equally abundant):

$$J' = \frac{H'}{H'_{max}} = \frac{H'}{\ln(S)}$$

$H' = -\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i \ln(p_i)\, H'_{max} = \ln(S)$ where: - H' is the observed Shannon diversity index: - H'_{max} is the maximum possible Shannon diversity for S species: - S is the total number of species - p_i is the proportion of individuals belonging to species i

J' ranges from 0 (completely uneven, one species dominates) to 1 (perfectly even, all species equally abundant).

Proof of Range:

Part 1: Maximum Value (J' = 1)

From Theorem 2.2, we proved that the Shannon index is maximized when all species are equally abundant ($p_i = 1/S$ for all i), giving $H'_{max} = \ln(S)$.

When the community has perfect evenness:

$$H' = -\sum_{i=1}^{S} \frac{1}{S} \ln\left(\frac{1}{S}\right) = \ln(S)$$

Therefore:

$$J' = \frac{\ln(S)}{\ln(S)} = 1$$

Part 2: Minimum Value (J' → 0)

The Shannon index reaches its minimum (H' = 0) when one species comprises the entire community ($p_1 = 1$, $p_i = 0$ for $i \neq 1$).

In this case:

$$J' = \frac{0}{\ln(S)} = 0$$

Part 3: Range [0, 1]

Since 0 ≤ H' ≤ ln(S) (from Theorem 2.2), we have:

$$0 \leq \frac{H'}{\ln(S)} \leq 1$$

Therefore, 0 ≤ J' ≤ 1. ∎

Interpretation:

Pielou's evenness measures how evenly individuals are distributed among the species present, independent of species richness. It answers the question: "How close is the observed diversity to the maximum possible diversity for this number of species?"

- **J' = 1:** Perfect evenness (all species have equal abundance)
- **J' ≈ 0.8-1.0:** High evenness (species abundances are relatively similar)
- **J' ≈ 0.5-0.8:** Moderate evenness (some species more abundant than others)
- **J' < 0.5:** Low evenness (one or few species dominate)
- **J' → 0:** Extreme dominance (one species comprises nearly all individuals)

Properties:

1. **Independence from richness:** J' is designed to be independent of species richness S, allowing comparison of evenness across communities with different numbers of species.

2. **Normalization:** By dividing by ln(S), J' normalizes the Shannon index to a [0,1] scale.

3. **Sensitivity:** J' is sensitive to changes in abundance of all species, not just the most abundant ones.

4. **Relationship to Hill numbers:** J' can be expressed using Hill numbers:

$$J' = \ln \frac{(¿^{1} D)}{\ln(¿^{0} D)¿} ¿$$

5. where ${}^1D = \exp(H')$ and ${}^0D = S$.

6. **Non-additivity:** Unlike the Shannon index, Pielou's evenness is not additive across independent communities.

Alternative Evenness Measures:

While Pielou's evenness is the most common, other evenness measures exist:

7. **Simpson's Evenness (E_D):**

$$E_D = \frac{{}^2D}{S} = \frac{\frac{1}{D}}{S} = \frac{1}{S\sum_{i=1}^{S} p_i^2}$$

8. Range: [1/S, 1]

9. **Smith and Wilson's Evenness (E_{var}):**

$$E_{var} = 1 - \frac{2}{\pi}\arctan\left(\frac{\sigma^2}{\mu}\right)$$

10. where σ^2 is the variance and μ is the mean of $\ln(p_i)$ Range: [0, 1]

11. **Camargo's Evenness** (E'):

$$E' = 1 - \sum_{i=1}^{S-1}\sum_{j=i+1}^{S} \frac{|p_i - p_j|}{S}$$

12. Range: [0, 1]

13. **Hill's Evenness Ratio:**

$$E_{q_1,q_2} = \frac{{}^{q_1}D}{{}^{q_2}D}$$

14. where $q_1 < q_2$ (commonly $q_1 = 1$, $q_2 = 2$)

Comparison of Evenness Measures:

Measure	Formula	Range	Advantages	Disadvantages
Pielou's J'	H'/ln(S)	[0, 1]	Most widely used, intuitive	Depends on S indirectly
Simpson's E_D	(1/D)/S	[1/S, 1]	Simple, robust to sampling	Range depends on S
Smith-Wilson	Based on variance	[0, 1]	Independent of S	Complex calculation
Camargo's E'	Based on differences	[0, 1]	Intuitive, geometric	Computationally intensive

Example Calculations:

Example 1: High Evenness - Community: 5 species with abundances [20, 20, 20, 20, 20] - Proportions: p_i = 0.2 for all i - H' = -5(0.2 ln 0.2) ≈ 1.609 - H'_{max} = ln(5) ≈ 1.609 - J' = 1.609/1.609 = 1.0

Example 2: Moderate Evenness - Community: 5 species with abundances [40, 25, 20, 10, 5] - Proportions: [0.4, 0.25, 0.2, 0.1, 0.05] - H' ≈ 1.395 - H'_{max} = ln(5) ≈ 1.609 - J' ≈ 0.867

Example 3: Low Evenness - Community: 5 species with abundances [90, 5, 3, 1, 1] - Proportions: [0.9, 0.05, 0.03, 0.01, 0.01] - H' ≈ 0.508 - H'_{max} = ln(5) ≈ 1.609 - J' ≈ 0.316

Relationship Between Diversity, Richness, and Evenness:

Diversity can be decomposed into richness and evenness components:

$$H' = \ln(S) \cdot J'$$

This shows that Shannon diversity is the product of maximum possible diversity (ln S) and evenness (J'). High diversity requires both high richness and high evenness.

Proof of Decomposition:

Starting with the definition of Pielou's evenness:

$$J' = \frac{H'}{\ln(S)}$$

Multiplying both sides by ln(S):

$$H' = J' \cdot \ln(S)$$

This can be rewritten as:

$$\text{Diversity} = \text{Richness component} \times \text{Evenness component}$$

This decomposition is useful for understanding the relative contributions of richness and evenness to overall diversity. ∎

Practical Considerations:

15. **Sample size effects:** Small samples may underestimate richness, affecting the denominator ln(S). Use rarefaction to standardize comparisons.

16. **Rare species:** J' is sensitive to rare species. Ensure adequate sampling to detect rare species.

17. **Interpretation context:** The same J' value may have different ecological meanings in different contexts (e.g., tropical vs. temperate ecosystems).

18. **Complementary measures:** Use J' alongside richness and diversity indices for complete assessment.

19. **Statistical testing:** Bootstrap or permutation tests can assess whether differences in J' between communities are significant.

Limitations:

20. **Dependence on S:** Although designed to be independent of richness, J' still depends on S through the denominator.

21. **Sensitivity to rare species:** J' can be influenced by rare species that may be sampling artifacts.

22. **Non-intuitive scale:** The [0,1] scale is intuitive, but intermediate values (e.g., J' = 0.7) lack clear ecological interpretation.

23. **Assumes complete sampling:** J' assumes all species have been detected, which is rarely true in practice.

Recommendations:

24. **Report alongside richness:** Always report S and H' along with J' for complete picture.

25. **Use confidence intervals:** Calculate confidence intervals using bootstrap methods.

26. **Consider alternatives:** For specific applications, other evenness measures may be more appropriate.

27. **Standardize sampling:** Ensure comparable sampling effort when comparing J' across communities.

28. **Interpret carefully:** Consider ecological context when interpreting J' values. ∎

Example 2.13: Evenness in disturbed ecosystems

In a forest ecosystem that has been selectively logged, the evenness of tree species may be lower than in an undisturbed forest, even if the species richness is similar. This is because a few disturbance-tolerant species may become dominant.

Example 2.14: Evenness in a restored grassland

In a restored grassland, the goal is often to establish a diverse and even community of native plant species. Pielou s evenness index can be used to monitor the success of the restoration project over time.

Example 2.15: Low evenness in an algal bloom

In a lake experiencing an algal bloom, one or a few species of algae may become extremely abundant, leading to a very low evenness index. This is a sign of an unhealthy ecosystem.

Problem 2.13: Evenness computation

Calculate Pielou s evenness index for the two insect communities from Problem 2.1. Discuss how evenness contributes to the overall diversity of each community.

Problem 2.14: Calculating other evenness indices

Another evenness index is Smith and Wilson s Evar index. Research the formula for this index and calculate it for the bird community in Problem 2.5. Compare the result to Pielou s evenness index.

Problem 2.15: Limitations of Pielou

s J

Discuss the limitations of Pielou s evenness index. For example, how is it affected by species richness? Are there any alternative evenness indices that address these limitations?

2.6 Supplementary Problems

1. Derive the formula for the Simpson index from the probability of two individuals being the same species.
2. Explain the concept of effective number of species" in the context of Hill numbers.
3. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of using a unified framework like Hill numbers compared to using individual diversity indices.
4. How does sample size affect the accuracy of diversity indices? Discuss the trade-off between sampling effort and the reliability of diversity estimates.
5. Explain the relationship between alpha, beta, and gamma diversity. How can these different levels of diversity be measured and integrated to provide a complete picture of biodiversity in a landscape?

2.7 References

[1] Colwell, R. K., Chao, A., Gotelli, N. J., Lin, S. Y., Mao, C. X., Chazdon, R. L., & Longino, J. T. (2012). Models and estimators linking individual-based and sample-based rarefaction, extrapolation and comparison of assemblages. *Journal of Plant Ecology*, 5(1), 3-21.

[2] Shannon, C. E. (1948). A mathematical theory of communication. *Bell System Technical Journal*, 27(3), 379-423.

[3] Simpson, E. H. (1949). Measurement of diversity. *Nature*, 163(4148), 688.

[4] Hill, M. O. (1973). Diversity and evenness: a unifying notation and its consequences. *Ecology*, 54(2), 427-432.

[5] Pielou, E. C. (1966). The measurement of diversity in different types of biological collections. *Journal of Theoretical Biology*, 13, 131-144.

[6] Smith, B., & Wilson, J. B. (1996). A consumer s guide to evenness indices. *Oikos*, 76(1), 70-82.

[7] Whittaker, R. H. (1960). Vegetation of the Siskiyou Mountains, Oregon and California. *Ecological monographs*, 30(3), 279-338.

Chapter 3: Functional and Phylogenetic Diversity

Beyond simply counting species, a deeper understanding of biodiversity requires considering the functional roles species play and their evolutionary relationships. Functional and phylogenetic diversity provide these crucial insights, moving from a taxonomic to a trait-based and historical perspective.

3.1 Functional Diversity Metrics

Functional diversity considers the value and range of functional traits of the organisms in a community. These traits, such as body size, diet, or nitrogen fixation ability, determine how species interact with their environment and contribute to ecosystem functions.

Theorem 3.1: Functional Richness, Evenness, and Divergence

Functional diversity can be decomposed into three primary components that capture different aspects of how species traits are distributed in a community: functional richness (the volume of trait space occupied), functional evenness (the regularity of species distribution in trait space), and functional divergence (the concentration of abundance at trait space extremes).

Formal Definitions:

Let: - S = number of species in the community - T = number of functional traits - $x_i \in \mathbb{R}$^T = trait vector for species i (i = 1, …, S) - p_i = relative abundance of species i (where $\Sigma p_i = 1$) - d_{ij} = functional distance between species i and j in trait space

1. **Functional Richness (FRic)**

$$FRic = \text{Volume}\left(\text{ConvexHull}\left(\left\{x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_S\right\}\right)\right)$$

For standardization:

$$FRic_{standardized} = \frac{\text{Volume}_{community}}{\text{Volume}_{regional\ pool}}$$

2. **Functional Evenness (FEve)**

$$FEve = \frac{\sum_{l=1}^{S-1} \min\left(PEW_l, \frac{1}{S-1}\right) - \frac{1}{S-1}}{1 - \frac{1}{S-1}}$$

where PEW_l is the partial weighted evenness for branch l of the minimum spanning tree.

3. Functional Divergence (FDiv)

$$FDiv = \frac{\Delta d + dG}{\Delta d + dG_{max}}$$

where Δd is the abundance-weighted deviation from mean distance to centroid, and dG is the distance from centroid to center of gravity.

Proof of Key Properties:

Proposition 1: FRic is independent of abundance

Proof: The convex hull is defined solely by the spatial positions of points (trait vectors x_i), not by their weights (abundances p_i). Adding or removing abundance from a species does not change its position in trait space, hence does not change the convex hull volume. ∎

Proposition 2: FEve ∈ [0, 1]

Proof: The numerator of FEve is the difference between the observed weighted evenness and the minimum possible (1/(S-1)). The denominator is the difference between maximum (1) and minimum (1/(S-1)). Since observed evenness is bounded by [1/(S-1), 1], the ratio is bounded by [0, 1]. ∎

Proposition 3: FDiv ∈ [0, 1]

Proof: When abundance is concentrated at the center, dG ≈ 0 and Δd < 0, giving FDiv ≈ 0. When abundance is concentrated at extremes, dG is maximized and Δd > 0, giving FDiv ≈ 1. The normalization ensures the ratio stays in [0, 1]. ∎

Example 3.1: Trait-based diversity in plants

In a plant community, key functional traits might include specific leaf area (SLA), plant height, and seed mass. Consider 5 species:

Species	SLA (m^2/kg)	Height (m)	Seed Mass (mg)	Abundance
A	10	0.5	1	0.2
B	15	1.0	5	0.3
C	20	2.0	10	0.2
D	25	3.0	20	0.2
E	30	4.0	50	0.1

FRic Calculation: - Standardize traits to mean 0, SD 1 - Calculate 3D convex hull volume - FRic = Volume of convex hull containing all 5 species

A community with a wide range of SLA, height, and seed mass values will have higher functional richness, indicating a greater variety of ecological strategies.

Example 3.2: Functional roles in a coral reef

On a coral reef, different fish species have distinct functional roles:

Functional Group	Species Example	Role	Trait Values
Herbivores	Parrotfish	Algae control	Large body, scraping teeth
Piscivores	Groupers	Population regulation	Very large body, predatory
Cleaners	Wrasse	Parasite removal	Small body, specialized behavior
Planktivores	Damselfish	Nutrient cycling	Small body, filter feeding

FRic: High (wide range of body sizes and feeding modes) **FEve:** Moderate (some functional groups more abundant) **FDiv:** High (abundance concentrated in herbivores and planktivores at trait extremes)

A high functional diversity of fish is essential for maintaining the overall health and resilience of the reef ecosystem.

Example 3.3: Functional diversity of pollinators

A community of pollinators with different functional traits:

Pollinator	Body Size (mm)	Tongue Length (mm)	Flight Range (km)	Abundance
Honeybee	12	6	3	0.4
Bumblebee	18	8	1	0.3
Butterfly	25	15	5	0.1
Hummingbird	80	40	10	0.1
Fly	5	2	0.5	0.1

FRic: High (wide range of body sizes and tongue lengths) **FEve:** Moderate (bees dominate) **FDiv:** Low (abundance concentrated near center, not at extremes)

A high functional diversity of pollinators can improve the pollination success of a wider range of plant species, enhancing the resilience of the plant community.

Example 3.4: Functional Redundancy vs. Uniqueness

Community A (High Redundancy): - 10 species, all with similar traits (SLA $\approx$ 15, Height $\approx$ 1m) - FRic = Low - Functional redundancy = High - Resilience to species loss = High (other species can compensate)

Community B (High Uniqueness): - 10 species, widely distributed traits - FRic = High - Functional redundancy = Low - Resilience to species loss = Low (each species unique)

Example 3.5: Conservation Priority Based on Functional Diversity

Two forest plots:

Plot 1: - 20 species, FRic = 0.4, FEve = 0.6, FDiv = 0.3 - Moderate trait space, evenly distributed, abundance at center

Plot 2: - 15 species, FRic = 0.7, FEve = 0.4, FDiv = 0.8 - Large trait space, unevenly distributed, abundance at extremes

Conservation Recommendation: - Plot 2 has higher priority despite lower species richness - Larger functional trait space (FRic = 0.7) - Contains functional specialists (FDiv = 0.8) - Loss of species would create larger functional gaps

Problem 3.1: Functional diversity calculation

Given a dataset of functional traits (beak size, leg length) for two bird communities:

Community A:

Species	Beak (mm)	Leg (mm)	Abundance
1	10	50	0.25
2	15	60	0.25
3	20	70	0.25
4	25	80	0.25

Community B:

Species	Beak (mm)	Leg (mm)	Abundance
1	12	55	0.4
2	14	58	0.3
3	16	62	0.2
4	18	65	0.1

Calculate FRic for each community (area of convex hull in 2D). Discuss what the difference implies for ecosystem functions.

Problem 3.2: Functional redundancy

Consider a community of three nitrogen-fixing plant species: - Species A: Abundance = 0.8, traits = (SLA: 20, Height: 1.5) - Species B: Abundance = 0.1, traits = (SLA: 19, Height: 1.4) - Species C: Abundance = 0.1, traits = (SLA: 21, Height: 1.6)

Calculate FRic, FEve, and FDiv. Although functional richness is low, there is functional redundancy. Discuss the importance for ecosystem stability if Species A is lost.

Problem 3.3: Interpreting FDiv

A grassland community has FDiv = 0.85. The most abundant species are: - Tall grasses with deep roots (extreme trait values) - Small forbs with shallow roots (opposite extreme)

What does this imply about competitive dynamics? Provide an ecological explanation for why abundance might be concentrated at trait extremes.

Problem 3.4: FEve Sensitivity

Calculate FEve for two communities with the same 4 species (traits in 1D: [1, 3, 5, 7]) but different abundances: - Community A: [0.25, 0.25, 0.25, 0.25] - Community B: [0.1, 0.1, 0.7, 0.1]

How does abundance distribution affect FEve? What does this tell you about community structure?

Problem 3.5: Multi-trait FRic

For 4 species with 2 traits: - Species 1: (Body size: 10, Diet breadth: 2) - Species 2: (Body size: 20, Diet breadth: 8) - Species 3: (Body size: 30, Diet breadth: 3) - Species 4: (Body size: 15, Diet breadth: 10)

Plot the species in 2D trait space and calculate the area of the convex hull. If a 5th species with traits (25, 5) is added, how does FRic change?

3.2 Phylogenetic Diversity

Phylogenetic diversity (PD) incorporates the evolutionary history of species in a community. It is a measure of the total branch length of the phylogenetic tree that connects all species in a given assemblage. Communities with greater phylogenetic diversity are thought to be more resilient and contain a greater diversity of features.

Theorem 3.2: Faith's Phylogenetic Diversity

Faith's Phylogenetic Diversity (PD) is defined as the sum of the lengths of all the branches on the phylogenetic tree that connect a given set of species to the root.

Formula:

$$PD = \sum_{b \in B} l_b$$

where: - B is the set of all branches connecting the species in the subset to the root of the phylogenetic tree - l_b is the length of branch b (typically in units of evolutionary time or genetic distance)

Formal Definition:

Let T = (V, E) be a rooted phylogenetic tree where: - V is the set of nodes (including tips representing species and internal nodes) - E is the set of edges (branches) connecting nodes - l: E → $\mathbb{R}^+$ is the length function assigning positive lengths to branches - S $\subseteq V_{tips}$ is a subset of species (tips of the tree)

Then:

$$PD(S)=\sum_{e\in Path(S)} l(e)$$

where Path(S) is the minimal set of branches connecting all species in S to the root.

Proof of Key Properties:

Proposition 1: Monotonicity

Statement: If $S_1 \subseteq S_2$, then $PD(S_1) \leq PD(S_2)$

Proof: - Path(S_1) consists of all branches needed to connect species in S_1 to the root - Path(S_2) consists of all branches needed to connect species in S_2 to the root - Since $S_1 \subseteq S_2$, every branch in Path(S_1) is also in Path(S_2) - Therefore, Path(S_1) $\subseteq$ Path(S_2) - Since all branch lengths are positive, $\Sigma_{e \in Path(S_1)} l(e) \leq \Sigma_{e \in Path(S_2)} l(e)$ - Thus, $PD(S_1) \leq PD(S_2)$ ∎

Proposition 2: Additivity (for disjoint clades)

Statement: If S_1 and S_2 are from disjoint clades (no shared ancestors except the root), then:

$$PD\left(S^1 \cup S^2\right) = PD\left(S^1\right) + PD\left(S^2\right) - PD(root)$$

Proof: - Path($S_1 \cup S_2$) = Path(S_1) ∪ Path(S_2) - Since clades are disjoint, Path(S_1) ∩ Path(S_2) = {branches from root} - By inclusion-exclusion: |Path($S_1 \cup S_2$)| = |Path(S_1)| + |Path(S_2)| - |Path(S_1) ∩ Path(S_2)| - Therefore: PD($S_1 \cup S_2$) = PD(S_1) + PD(S_2) - PD(root) ∎

Proposition 3: Minimum Value

Statement: For a set of S species, $PD \geq (S-1) \times l_{min}$*, where* l_{min} *is the minimum branch length*

Proof: - To connect S species to the root requires at least S-1 branches (minimum spanning tree) - Each branch has length $\geq l_{min}$ *- Therefore,* $PD \geq (S-1) \times l_{min}$ ∎

Properties:

- **Non-negativity:** PD ≥ 0 for all S
- **Monotonicity:** Adding species never decreases PD
- **Scale-dependence:** PD depends on the unit of branch length (time, genetic distance)
- **Correlation with richness:** Generally PD increases with species richness, but not always
- **Sensitivity to tree topology:** PD is higher for species from different clades
- **Independence from abundance:** PD uses presence/absence only

Relationship to Species Richness:

While PD is correlated with species richness (S), the relationship is not linear. The PD/S ratio (average evolutionary distinctiveness) varies:

6. **High PD/S:** Species are phylogenetically diverse (from different clades)
7. **Low PD/S:** Species are phylogenetically clustered (closely related)

Computational Algorithm:

```
Algorithm: Calculate PD for species set S
Input: Phylogenetic tree T, species set S
Output: PD value

1. Initialize: visited_branches = empty set
2. For each species s in S:
   3. Trace path from s to root
   4. For each branch b in path:
```

```
    5. If b not in visited_branches:
        6. Add l(b) to PD
        7. Add b to visited_branches
8. Return PD
```

Time Complexity: O(S × h) where h is tree height

Example 3.6: Phylogenetic tree analysis

Consider two communities, each with three species, on the following phylogenetic tree:

```
        Root
         |
    _____|_____
   |           |
   A       ____|____
          |         |
      ____|____     C
     |         |
     B         D
```

Branch lengths: Root-A = 100, Root-Node1 = 50, Node1-Node2 = 30, Node2-B = 20, Node2-D = 20, Node1-C = 80

Community 1: {A, B, D} - Path: Root-A (100) + Root-Node1 (50) + Node1-Node2 (30) + Node2-B (20) + Node2-D (20) - PD = 100 + 50 + 30 + 20 + 20 = 220

Community 2: {B, D, C} - Path: Root-Node1 (50) + Node1-Node2 (30) + Node2-B (20) + Node2-D (20) + Node1-C (80) - PD = 50 + 30 + 20 + 20 + 80 = 200

Even though both communities have S=3, Community 1 has higher PD because species A is more evolutionarily distinct.

Example 3.7: PD in island ecosystems

Hawaiian honeycreepers phylogenetic tree (simplified):

```
        Common Ancestor (50 Mya)
                 |
        _________|_________
       |                   |
```

```
   Mainland            Hawaiian
   Finches             Honeycreepers
                            |
                      ______|______
                     |             |
              Nectarivores    Insectivores
```

Community A (Mainland): 5 finch species, PD = 150 million years **Community B (Hawaiian):** 5 honeycreeper species, PD = 200 million years

Community B has higher PD despite same richness, reflecting unique evolutionary radiation.

Example 3.8: Conservation Triage Using PD

Three communities, each with 10 species:

Community	Species Richness	PD (million years)	PD/S
A	10	500	50
B	10	800	80
C	10	300	30

Conservation Priority: B > A > C

Community B has highest PD, preserving the most evolutionary history.

Example 3.9: PD vs. Richness Trade-off

Scenario 1: Protect 20 species from one genus (closely related) - S = 20, PD = 100 million years

Scenario 2: Protect 10 species from different families - S = 10, PD = 500 million years

Decision: Scenario 2 preserves more evolutionary history despite lower richness.

Example 3.10: Temporal Change in PD

A forest plot monitored over 50 years:

Year	Species Richness	PD	PD/S	Interpretation
1970	40	1200	30	Diverse community

1990	35	1100	31.4	Lost common species
2010	30	900	30	Phylogenetic erosion
2020	28	700	25	Lost ancient lineages

The declining PD/S ratio indicates loss of evolutionarily distinct species.

Problem 3.6: PD computation

Given the following phylogenetic tree with branch lengths:

```
        Root
         |
   ______|______ (100)
   |           |
   A      _____|____ (50)
          |         |
     _____|____     E (30)
     |  (40)   |
     B         C
    (20)      (20)
     |         |
     D         F
```

Calculate Faith's PD for: a) Community 1: {A, B, D} b) Community 2: {C, E, F} c) Community 3: {A, E}

Which community has the highest PD? Why?

Problem 3.7: Comparing PD and species richness

Construct a scenario where a community with S=5 species has higher PD than a community with S=10 species. Draw a simple phylogenetic tree to illustrate this. What does this tell you about the evolutionary history of the two communities?

Problem 3.8: PD and Extinction Risk

A community has 15 species. Three species are threatened with extinction: - Species X: Evolutionarily distinct (contributes 200 million years unique PD) - Species Y: Part of large genus (contributes 20 million years unique PD) - Species Z: Part of large genus (contributes 15 million years unique PD)

If you can only save one species, which should it be based on PD? Calculate the PD loss for each scenario.

Problem 3.9: PD Accumulation Curve

For a regional species pool of 50 species, plot a PD accumulation curve showing how PD increases as species are added. Compare two scenarios: a) Species added in order of evolutionary distinctiveness (most distinct first) b) Species added randomly

What does this tell you about conservation strategies?

Problem 3.10: Phylogenetic Clustering vs. Overdispersion

Two communities on the same phylogenetic tree: - Community A: Species are phylogenetically clustered (closely related) - Community B: Species are phylogenetically overdispersed (distantly related)

Both have S=10. Which has higher PD? What ecological processes might lead to each pattern?

3.3 Integration of Taxonomic, Functional, and Phylogenetic Diversity

Taxonomic (species-based), functional, and phylogenetic diversity provide different but complementary perspectives on biodiversity. A comprehensive assessment requires integrating all three dimensions to understand the structure, function, and evolutionary history of a community.

Theorem 3.3: Multi-Dimensional Diversity Framework

The total biodiversity of a community can be formally represented as a vector in a three-dimensional diversity space, where each dimension captures a distinct aspect of biodiversity.

Formal Definition:

Let the biodiversity state of a community be represented by the vector:

$$B=(TD, FD, PD)\in R_{+}^{3}$$

where: - TD = Taxonomic Diversity (e.g., species richness or Shannon index) - FD = Functional Diversity (e.g., functional richness or Rao's Q) - PD = Phylogenetic Diversity (e.g., Faith's PD)

Normalization:

For comparison across communities, normalize each dimension to [0, 1]:

$$B_{norm} = \left(\frac{TD}{TD_{max}}, \frac{FD}{FD_{max}}, \frac{PD}{PD_{max}} \right)$$

where max values are from the regional species pool or theoretical maximum.

Diversity Distance:

The dissimilarity between two communities can be measured as:

$$d(B_1, B_2) = \sqrt{w_T ¿¿}$$

where w_T, w_F, w_P are weights (typically $w_T + w_F + w_P = 1$).

Correlation Structure:

The three dimensions are often correlated but can show important mismatches:

$$\rho(TD, FD) = \text{correlation between taxonomic and functional diversity}$$

$$\rho(TD, PD) = \text{correlation between taxonomic and phylogenetic diversity}$$

$$\rho(FD, PD) = \text{correlation between functional and phylogenetic diversity}$$

Key Relationships:

- **Positive correlation (typical):** More species →more traits →more evolutionary history
- **Mismatch patterns:**
    1. High PD, Low FD: Convergent evolution (distantly related species with similar traits)
    2. Low PD, High FD: Divergent evolution (closely related species with different traits)
    3. High TD, Low FD: Functional redundancy (many species, few functional roles)
    4. High TD, Low PD: Phylogenetic clustering (many closely related species)

Rationale:

Why three dimensions are necessary:

- **Taxonomic diversity (TD)** captures species richness and evenness but ignores traits and evolution
- **Functional diversity (FD)** captures ecosystem functioning but ignores evolutionary history
- **Phylogenetic diversity (PD)** captures evolutionary history but doesn't guarantee functional diversity

Mathematical Independence:

The three dimensions are not mathematically redundant. Consider:

8. **Example A:** 10 species from one genus, all with similar traits
    1. TD = 10 (high)
    2. FD = low (similar traits)
    3. PD = low (closely related)
9. **Example B:** 10 species from different families, with diverse traits
    1. TD = 10 (high)
    2. FD = high (diverse traits)
    3. PD = high (distantly related)

Both have the same TD but different FD and PD, demonstrating independence.

Proof of Non-Redundancy:

Proposition: The three dimensions TD, FD, and PD are not linearly dependent

Proof by counterexample:

Consider three communities:

- **Community 1:** S=10 species, all functionally similar, all closely related
    4. TD = 10, FD = 0.1, PD = 50

- **Community 2:** S=10 species, functionally diverse, closely related (adaptive radiation)
    5. TD = 10, FD = 0.9, PD = 60
- **Community 3:** S=10 species, functionally similar, distantly related (convergent evolution)
    6. TD = 10, FD = 0.2, PD = 500

All three have the same TD but different combinations of FD and PD. This shows that TD does not determine FD or PD, and FD and PD vary independently. Therefore, the three dimensions are not linearly dependent. ∎

Ecological Interpretation of Mismatches:

Pattern	Interpretation	Example
High PD, Low FD	Convergent evolution	Desert plants (cacti and euphorbs)
Low PD, High FD	Adaptive radiation	Darwin's finches
High TD, Low FD	Functional redundancy	Tropical forests (many tree species, similar functions)
High TD, Low PD	Phylogenetic clustering	Specialist communities (e.g., all orchids)

Conservation Implications:

Optimal conservation strategy: Maximize all three dimensions

Trade-offs: - Protecting phylogenetically distinct species may not maximize functional diversity - Protecting functionally important species may not maximize evolutionary history - Protecting species-rich areas may not maximize either FD or PD

Multi-objective optimization:

$$\max U = w_T \times TD + w_F \times FD + w_P \times PD$$

subject to budget and area constraints.

Example 3.11: Comprehensive diversity assessment

An alpine plant community assessment:

Metric	Value	Interpretation
Species Richness (TD)	25	Low (harsh environment)
Functional Richness (FD)	0.7	High (diverse adaptations)
Faith's PD	800 Mya	High (ancient lineages)

Analysis: - Low TD but high FD: Few species, but each has unique adaptations (cushion plants, rosettes, etc.) - High PD: Contains relict species from ancient lineages - **Conclusion:** High conservation value despite low species richness

Example 3.12: Tropical Rainforest vs. Temperate Forest

Forest Type	TD	FD	PD	Interpretation
Tropical	200	0.8	2000	High in all dimensions
Temperate	50	0.6	800	Moderate in all dimensions

Correlation: All three dimensions positively correlated (typical pattern)

Example 3.13: Island Adaptive Radiation

Hawaiian silverswords (28 species, one genus):

Dimension	Value	Interpretation
TD	28	High species richness
FD	0.9	Extremely high (shrubs to trees to rosettes)
PD	150 Mya	Low (all from one ancestor 5 Mya)

Pattern: Low PD, High FD (adaptive radiation)

Example 3.14: Convergent Evolution

Desert succulents (cacti in Americas, euphorbs in Africa):

Dimension	Value	Interpretation
TD	50	Moderate
FD	0.3	Low (similar water-storage traits)
PD	1500 Mya	Very high (different families)

Pattern: High PD, Low FD (convergent evolution)

Example 3.15: Conservation Priority Ranking

Five sites evaluated:

Site	TD	FD	PD	Composite Score*
A	100	0.8	1200	0.85
B	80	0.9	1500	0.90
C	120	0.6	900	0.75
D	60	0.7	1800	0.80
E	90	0.5	1000	0.70

*Composite Score = $(TD_{norm} + FD_{norm} + PD_{norm}) / 3$

Priority: B > A > D > C > E

Site B has highest composite score despite not having highest TD.

Problem 3.11: Integrated analysis

For a community with the following data: - 20 species with abundance data - 3 functional traits (body size, diet breadth, habitat use) - Phylogenetic tree with branch lengths

Calculate: a) Shannon index (TD) b) Functional richness (FD) c) Faith's PD

Create a 3D plot with axes (TD, FD, PD) and place the community in this space. Compare to a regional species pool. What does the community's position tell you?

Problem 3.12: Mismatch Interpretation

A community has: - TD = 0.8 (high, normalized) - FD = 0.3 (low, normalized) - PD = 0.4 (moderate, normalized)

What ecological or evolutionary processes might explain this pattern? Provide a specific example of a real community that might show this pattern.

Problem 3.13: Conservation Trade-offs

You have a budget to protect 3 out of 5 sites. Each site has different TD, FD, and PD values (given in a table). Your goal is to maximize total diversity across all three dimensions. Formulate this as an optimization problem and solve it. How does the solution change if you weight PD twice as much as TD and FD?

Problem 3.14: Temporal Dynamics

A forest plot is monitored for 30 years. Calculate TD, FD, and PD for years 0, 10, 20, and 30. Plot the trajectory in 3D diversity space. What does the trajectory tell you about the ecological processes occurring in the forest?

Problem 3.15: Beta Diversity in Multiple Dimensions

For two communities (A and B), calculate: - Beta taxonomic diversity (Sørensen index) - Beta functional diversity (functional dissimilarity) - Beta phylogenetic diversity (phylogenetic dissimilarity)

How do these three beta diversity metrics relate to each other? What does it mean if beta TD is high but beta FD is low?

3.4 Supplementary Problems

- Explain the concept of functional redundancy and its relationship to functional evenness. Provide a mathematical definition.
- How can phylogenetic diversity be used to identify areas of high conservation priority? Discuss the EDGE (Evolutionarily Distinct and Globally Endangered) approach.
- Discuss the challenges and limitations of integrating the three dimensions of biodiversity in a single framework. How would you weight TD, FD, and PD for different conservation objectives?
- Discuss the concept of 'functional rarity' and its importance for conservation. How is it calculated?
- How might climate change affect the functional and phylogenetic diversity of a community? Provide specific examples with hypothetical data.

3.5 References

[1] Villéger, S., Mason, N. W., & Mouillot, D. (2008). New multidimensional functional diversity indices for a multifaceted framework in functional ecology. *Ecology*, 89(8), 2290-2301.

[2] Faith, D. P. (1992). Conservation evaluation and phylogenetic diversity. *Biological Conservation*, 61(1), 1-10.

[3] Tucker, C. M., Cadotte, M. W., Carvalho, S. B., Davies, T. J., Ferrier, S., Fritz, S. A., … & Pavoine, S. (2017). A guide to phylogenetic metrics for conservation, community ecology and macroecology. *Biological Reviews*, 92(2), 698-715.

[4] Gagic, V., Bartomeus, I., & Dicks, L. V. (2015). The role of functional rarity in the state and trends of ecosystem services. *Journal of Applied Ecology*, 52(3), 661-671.

[5] Thuiller, W., Lavorel, S., Araújo, M. B., Sykes, M. T., & Prentice, I. C. (2005). Climate change threats to plant diversity in Europe. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 102(23), 8245-8250.

[6] Laliberté, E., & Legendre, P. (2010). A distance-based framework for measuring functional diversity from multiple traits. *Ecology*, 91(1), 299-305.

[7] Mouchet, M. A., et al. (2010). Functional diversity measures: An overview of their redundancy and their ability to discriminate community assembly rules. *Functional Ecology*, 24(4), 867-876.

[8] Isaac, N. J., Turvey, S. T., Collen, B., Waterman, C., & Baillie, J. E. (2007). Mammals on the EDGE: conservation priorities based on threat and phylogeny. *PLoS One*, 2(3), e296.

Chapter 4: Ecosystem Services Classification and Quantification

Ecosystem services are the benefits people obtain from ecosystems. To manage and value these services, we need a systematic way to classify and quantify them. This chapter introduces the CICES framework for classification and explores methods for quantifying different types of services.

4.1 CICES Framework

The Common International Classification of Ecosystem Services (CICES) provides a standardized, hierarchical system for classifying ecosystem services. It is designed to be comprehensive, mutually exclusive, and consistent across different applications.

Theorem 4.1: Hierarchical Classification Structure

The CICES framework can be formally represented as a hierarchical taxonomy with five nested levels, forming a rooted tree structure that ensures mutual exclusivity and exhaustive coverage of ecosystem services.

Formal Definition:

Let CICES be a hierarchical classification system defined as the tuple:

$$CICES = (L_1, L_2, L_3, L_4, L_5, \tau, R)$$

where: - L_1 = {Section} = {Provisioning, Regulating & Maintenance, Cultural} - L_2 = {Division} (subdivisions of sections) - L_3 = {Group} (subdivisions of divisions) - L_4 = {Class} (subdivisions of groups) - L_5 = {Class Type} (most specific service types) - τ: $L_i \rightarrow L_{i-1}$ is the parent mapping function (for i = 2, 3, 4, 5) - R is the set of classification rules

Hierarchical Structure Properties:

For any ecosystem service s at level L_i:

- **Unique Parent: $\tau(s)$ is the unique parent category at level L_{i-1}**

- **Tree Structure:** The hierarchy forms a rooted tree with Section as the root
- **Path Uniqueness:** There is exactly one path from any service to the root

Classification Rules (R):

Rule 1 (Mutual Exclusivity): For any level L_i, services are mutually exclusive:

$$\forall s_1, s_2 \in L_i, s_1 \neq s_2 \Rightarrow s_1 \cap s_2 = \emptyset$$

Rule 2 (Exhaustiveness): All ecosystem services fit into the classification:

$$\forall s \in ES, \exists! c \in L_5 : s \in c$$

where ES is the set of all ecosystem services.

Rule 3 (No Double Counting): Supporting services (intermediate processes) are not separately classified:

$$SS \cap \left(L_1 \cup L_2 \cup L_3 \cup L_4 \cup L_5\right) = \emptyset$$

where SS = {nutrient cycling, soil formation, primary production, …}

Rationale:

Supporting services are excluded because they are intermediate processes that enable final services. Including them would lead to double counting. For example: - Nutrient cycling →enables crop production (provisioning) - Soil formation →enables food production (provisioning) - Primary production →enables carbon sequestration (regulating)

Proof of Mutual Exclusivity:

Proposition: CICES ensures no service is counted twice

Proof: 1. By Rule 1, services at the same level are mutually exclusive 2. By the tree structure, each service has exactly one parent at each higher level 3. Therefore, each service has exactly one path to the root 4. This means each service belongs to exactly one Section, one Division, one Group, one Class, and one Class Type 5. Thus, no service can be classified in multiple categories at the same level 6. Therefore, double counting is mathematically impossible within the CICES structure ∎

Three Main Sections:

L_1 = {P, R, C} where:

- **P (Provisioning Services):** Material and energy outputs
  7. Formal definition: Services where ecosystems provide tangible goods
  8. Examples: Food, water, timber, fiber, genetic resources
  9. Measurement: Physical quantities (mass, volume, energy content)
- **R (Regulating & Maintenance Services):** Regulation of environmental conditions
  10. Formal definition: Services where ecosystems regulate natural processes
  11. Examples: Climate regulation, water purification, pollination, pest control
  12. Measurement: Functional relationships, avoided costs, replacement costs
- **C (Cultural Services):** Non-material benefits
  13. Formal definition: Services where ecosystems provide non-material benefits to well-being
  14. Examples: Recreation, aesthetic values, spiritual enrichment, education
  15. Measurement: Revealed preference, stated preference, social media analysis

Hierarchical Levels:

Level	Name	Cardinality	Description
L_1	Section	3	Broadest categories
L_2	Division	~11	Major subdivisions
L_3	Group	~30	Functional groups
L_4	Class	~100+	Specific service types
L_5	Class Type	~200+	Most detailed specification

Aggregation and Disaggregation:

The hierarchical structure allows flexible aggregation:

$$Value(L_i) = \sum_{s \in Children(L_i)} Value(s)$$

where Children(L_i) are all services at level L_{i+1} that have L_i as parent.

Example Hierarchy:

```
Section: Provisioning
  └── Division: Nutrition
      └── Group: Cultivated crops
          └── Class: Cereals
              └── Class Type: Wheat
```

Mathematical Properties:

- **Completeness:** Every ecosystem service can be classified
- **Consistency:** Classification is independent of assessor (given same information)
- **Scalability:** Applicable from local to global scales
- **Comparability:** Enables comparison across different ecosystems and regions

Example 4.1: Service mapping in a forest

A temperate forest ecosystem can be comprehensively mapped using CICES:

Provisioning Services:

Division	Group	Class	Class Type	Quantification
Materials	Biomass	Wood	Timber	500 m³/year
Nutrition	Wild plants	Berries	Blueberries	2 tonnes/year
Nutrition	Wild animals	Game	Deer	50 animals/year

Regulating & Maintenance Services:

Division	Group	Class	Class Type	Quantification

Climate regulation	Carbon sequestration	Biomass storage	Forest carbon	10 tC/ha/year
Water regulation	Hydrological cycle	Flow regulation	Baseflow maintenance	1000 m³/day
Air quality	Filtration	Particulate removal	PM2.5 removal	50 kg/ha/year

Cultural Services:

Division	Group	Class	Class Type	Quantification
Recreation	Physical use	Hiking	Trail use	10,000 visits/year
Aesthetic	Visual	Scenic views	Forest vistas	$2M property premium
Education	Scientific	Research	Field studies	50 studies/year

Example 4.2: Ecosystem services of an urban park

A 10-hectare urban park provides diverse services:

Provisioning (P): - Urban agriculture: 5 tonnes vegetables/year - Freshwater: 100 m³/year from park pond

Regulating & Maintenance (R): - Urban heat island reduction: 2°C cooling effect - Stormwater runoff control: 5,000 m³/year infiltration - Air quality: 500 kg PM2.5 removal/year - Noise reduction: 10 dB attenuation

Cultural (C): - Recreation: 50,000 visits/year - Social cohesion: 200 community events/year - Mental health: Stress reduction for 5,000 nearby residents

Example 4.3: Coral reef service classification

A coral reef ecosystem (1 km²):

Section	Service	Quantification	Annual Value
Provisioning	Fish harvest	50 tonnes/year	$500,000

Provisioning	Aquarium trade	10,000 fish/year	$100,000
Regulating	Coastal protection	Wave attenuation 70%	$5,000,000 (avoided damage)
Regulating	Nutrient cycling	100 kg N/year	Enabling service
Cultural	Tourism	100,000 visits/year	$10,000,000
Cultural	Research	20 studies/year	$200,000

Total Annual Value: $15.8 million

Example 4.4: Agricultural landscape services

A 1,000-hectare Midwest agricultural landscape:

Managed Components (900 ha cropland): - Provisioning: Corn (9,000 tonnes), Soy (4,500 tonnes) - Regulating: Soil carbon storage (declining) - Cultural: Rural heritage (low)

Semi-Natural Components (100 ha woodlots + streams): - Provisioning: Timber (50 m^3/year) - Regulating: Water purification (high), Pollination (critical), Pest control (moderate) - Cultural: Hunting, fishing, bird watching

Integrated Assessment: Semi-natural components provide disproportionate regulating and cultural services despite small area.

Example 4.5: CICES Application to Policy

A watershed management plan uses CICES to:

- **Classify** all services provided by the watershed
- **Quantify** each service using appropriate methods
- **Value** services in monetary and non-monetary terms
- **Prioritize** conservation actions based on service importance
- **Monitor** changes in service provision over time

Result: Systematic, transparent decision-making framework.

Problem 4.1: Classification exercise

Using the CICES framework, classify the ecosystem services provided by a coral reef ecosystem. Identify at least one service from each of the three main sections and classify it down to the class level.

Required: - Create a table with columns: Section, Division, Group, Class - Include at least 3 services (one from each section) - Provide brief quantification method for each

Problem 4.2: Classifying agricultural landscape services

Consider a typical agricultural landscape in the American Midwest (1,000 hectares total): - 850 ha corn/soy rotation - 100 ha woodlots - 50 ha riparian buffers and streams

Classify at least five services provided by this entire landscape, including services from both managed and semi-natural components. For each service, specify: a) CICES classification (to Class level) b) Quantification method c) Likely magnitude (estimate with units)

Problem 4.3: Double Counting Identification

A consultant's ecosystem service assessment includes: - Timber production (500 m^3/year) - Carbon sequestration (10 tC/ha/year) - Soil formation (1 mm/year) - Nutrient cycling (100 kg N/year) - Water purification (removal of 50 kg nutrients/year)

Which of these should be excluded from a CICES-compliant assessment to avoid double counting? Explain your reasoning using the formal definition of Rule 3.

Problem 4.4: Hierarchical Aggregation

Given the following Class-level service values for a forest: - Timber: \$50,000/year - Fuelwood: \$10,000/year - Berries: \$5,000/year - Mushrooms: \$3,000/year

All four belong to Division "Biomass" under Section "Provisioning". Calculate the aggregated value at: a) Division level (Biomass) b) Section level (Provisioning)

If the forest also provides \$100,000/year in Regulating services and \$200,000/year in Cultural services, what is the total ecosystem service value?

Problem 4.5: CICES Revision Analysis

CICES has evolved from V4 to V5. Research the main changes between versions. How do these changes improve the classification? What challenges remain?

4.2 Provisioning Services

Provisioning services are the material or energy outputs from ecosystems. They include food, water, and other resources.

Theorem 4.2: Material and Energy Flows

The quantification of provisioning services is based on measuring the flow of materials and energy from the ecosystem to the economy, following mass balance and thermodynamic principles.

Formal Definition:

Let Q_p be the total quantity of provisioning service from an ecosystem. Then:

$$Q_p = \sum_{i=1}^{n} M_i \times C_i \times E_i$$

where: - n = number of distinct products - M_i = mass, volume, or count of product i harvested per unit time - C_i = conversion factor to standard units (e.g., kg dry matter per kg fresh weight) - E_i = extraction efficiency (proportion of available resource actually harvested, $0 \leq E_i \leq 1$)

Extended Form (with quality adjustment):

$$Q_p = \sum_{i=1}^{n} M_i \times C_i \times E_i \times Q_i$$

where Q_i = quality factor (e.g., grade A vs. grade B timber)

Mass Balance Constraint:

For sustainable provisioning:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} M_i \leq R + G - D$$

where: - R = standing stock (resource available at start of period) - G = growth/regeneration during period - D = natural mortality/decay during period

Proof of Sustainability Condition:

Proposition: Harvest is sustainable if and only if M ≤ G

Proof: - Let R_t = standing stock at time t - $R_{t+1} = R_t + G - D - M$ (mass balance) - For sustainability, we require $R_{t+1} \geq R_t$ (non-declining stock) - Therefore: $R_t + G - D - M \geq R_t$ - Simplifying: $G - D - M \geq 0$ - Thus: $M \leq G - D$ - If D is natural mortality (unavoidable), then sustainable harvest is $M \leq G - D$ - In the special case where $D = 0$ (no natural mortality), $M \leq G$ ∎

Energy Content (for bioenergy services):

$$E_p = \sum_{i=1}^{n} M_i \times H_i$$

where: - E_p = total energy content (MJ or kWh) - H_i = heating value of product i (MJ/kg)

Measurement Methods:

- **Direct measurement:** Weighing, counting, volumetric measurement
- **Sampling:** Statistical estimation from sample plots
- **Remote sensing:** Satellite-based yield estimation
- **Modeling:** Process-based models (e.g., crop growth models)

Uncertainty Quantification:

$$\sigma_{Q_p}^2 = \sum_{i=1}^{n} \left[\left(\frac{\partial Q_p}{\partial M_i} \right)^2 \sigma_{M_i}^2 + \left(\frac{\partial Q_p}{\partial C_i} \right)^2 \sigma_{C_i}^2 \right]$$

assuming independent errors in M_i and C_i.

Example 4.6: Food production services

A 100-hectare farm produces multiple crops:

Crop	Area (ha)	Yield (tonnes/ha)	Total (tonnes)	Conversion	Dry Matter (tonnes)
Corn	50	10	500	0.85	425
Wheat	30	5	150	0.88	132
Soybeans	20	3	60	0.90	54

Total Provisioning Service: 611 tonnes dry matter/year

Energy Content: - Corn: 425 × 18 MJ/kg = 7,650 GJ - Wheat: 132 × 16 MJ/kg = 2,112 GJ - Soybeans: 54 × 24 MJ/kg = 1,296 GJ - **Total:** 11,058 GJ/year

Example 4.7: Freshwater provisioning

A river basin (10,000 km²) provides freshwater:

Use	Abstraction (million m³/year)	Percentage
Municipal	500	50%
Agricultural	400	40%
Industrial	100	10%
Total	**1,000**	**100%**

Sustainability Check: - Annual renewable water: 1,200 million m³ - Abstraction: 1,000 million m³ - Environmental flow requirement: 300 million m³ - **Status:** Unsustainable (1,000 + 300 > 1,200)

Example 4.8: Timber provisioning with quality adjustment

A forest (1,000 ha) produces timber:

Species	Volume (m³)	Quality Factor	Adjusted Volume (m³)
Oak (Grade A)	500	1.5	750
Pine (Grade B)	1,000	1.0	1,000
Poplar (Grade C)	500	0.7	350

Total Quality-Adjusted Provisioning: 2,100 m³ equivalent/year

Example 4.9: Fishery provisioning with stock assessment

A coastal fishery:

10. Standing stock (R): 10,000 tonnes
11. Annual growth (G): 2,000 tonnes
12. Natural mortality (D): 500 tonnes
13. **Maximum Sustainable Yield: M_{max} = G - D = 1,500 tonnes/year**
14. **Current harvest:** 1,800 tonnes/year
15. **Status: Overfished ($M > M_{max}$)**

Example 4.10: Wild food provisioning

A 500-hectare forest provides wild foods:

Product	Quantity	Unit	Market Price	Value
Mushrooms	5 tonnes	kg	$10/kg	$50,000
Berries	10 tonnes	kg	$5/kg	$50,000
Nuts	2 tonnes	kg	$15/kg	$30,000
Game (deer)	50 animals	animal	$500/animal	$25,000

Total Provisioning Value: $155,000/year

Problem 4.6: Quantifying provisioning services

Calculate the total provisioning service of a timber forest (500 hectares) in cubic meters of wood, given: - Species A: 300 ha, yield 5 m³/ha/year, wood density 600 kg/m³ - Species B: 200 ha, yield 8 m³/ha/year, wood density 450 kg/m³

Calculate: a) Total volume (m³/year) b) Total mass (tonnes/year) c) Energy content (assuming heating value 18 MJ/kg dry matter, moisture content 20%)

Problem 4.7: Valuing multiple provisioning services

A 100-hectare mixed-use landscape produces: - 500 tonnes corn (market price \$200/tonne) - 10 tonnes wild mushrooms (market price \$5,000/tonne) - 50 m^3 timber (market price \$150/m^3) - 20,000 m^3 freshwater (market price \$0.50/m^3)

Calculate: a) Total annual market value b) Value per hectare c) Which service contributes most to total value?

Problem 4.8: Sustainability Assessment

A fishery has: - Current stock: 50,000 tonnes - Intrinsic growth rate: 10% per year - Natural mortality: 5% per year - Current harvest: 3,000 tonnes/year

d) Calculate the net growth rate
e) Calculate the maximum sustainable yield
f) Is the current harvest sustainable?
g) What harvest level would stabilize the stock?

Problem 4.9: Conversion Factors

A wetland produces 1,000 tonnes of fresh cattail biomass per year. To convert to standard units: - Moisture content: 75% - Ash content (of dry matter): 10% - Heating value (of ash-free dry matter): 17 MJ/kg

Calculate: a) Dry matter (tonnes/year) b) Ash-free dry matter (tonnes/year) c) Total energy content (GJ/year)

Problem 4.10: Uncertainty Propagation

Timber volume is calculated as $V = A \times H \times F$ where: - A = area (100 ± 5 ha) - H = yield (10 ± 2 m^3/ha/year) - F = form factor (0.7 ± 0.05)

Calculate: a) Expected volume b) Uncertainty in volume (assuming independent errors) c) Coefficient of variation

4.3 Regulating and Maintenance Services

Regulating and maintenance services are the benefits obtained from the regulation of ecosystem processes. They include climate regulation, water purification, and pollination.

Theorem 4.3: Regulation Functions

The quantification of regulating services requires modeling the underlying ecological processes using functional relationships that link ecosystem structure and function to human well-being.

General Form:

$$R_s = f(E, S, P, C)$$

where: - R_s = magnitude of regulating service - E = ecosystem structure (e.g., biomass, species composition) - S = ecosystem state (e.g., health, condition) - P = environmental pressures (e.g., pollution, climate) - C = context factors (e.g., location, beneficiaries) - f = functional relationship (often non-linear)

Example: Carbon Sequestration

$$C_{seq} = GPP - R_a - R_h - L$$

where: - C_{seq} = net carbon sequestration (tC/ha/year) - GPP = Gross Primary Production (tC/ha/year) - R_a = autotrophic respiration (tC/ha/year) - R_h = heterotrophic respiration (tC/ha/year) - L = carbon losses (fire, harvest, leaching) (tC/ha/year)

Simplified:

$$C_{seq} = NPP - R_h - L$$

where NPP = Net Primary Production = GPP - R_a

Proof of Carbon Balance:

Proposition: Net Ecosystem Production (NEP) equals net carbon sequestration

Proof: - By definition, $NEP = GPP - R_{total}$ where $R_{total} = R_a + R_h$ - $NEP = GPP - R_a - R_h$ - But $GPP - R_a = NPP$ (by definition of NPP) - Therefore, $NEP = NPP - R_h$ - Net carbon sequestration is the change in ecosystem carbon stock - ΔC = inputs - outputs = $NPP - R_h - L$ - Where L represents non-respiratory losses - Therefore, $C_{seq} = NEP - L$ - In the absence of disturbance ($L = 0$), $C_{seq} = NEP$ ∎

Example: Water Purification

$$P_r = P_{¿} \times \left(1 - e^{-k \times L}\right)$$

where: - P_r = pollutant removed (kg/year) - P_{in} = pollutant input (kg/year) - k = removal rate constant (1/m) - L = flow path length through ecosystem (m)

Example: Pollination

$$Y = Y_0 \times \left(1 - e^{\frac{-V}{V_{sat}}}\right)$$

where: - Y = crop yield with pollination (tonnes/ha) - Y_0 = maximum yield with optimal pollination (tonnes/ha) - V = pollinator visitation rate (visits/flower/day) - V_{sat} = saturation visitation rate

Measurement Approaches:

- **Process-based models:** Mechanistic simulation of ecological processes
- **Avoided cost:** Cost of replacing the service with technology
- **Replacement cost:** Cost of providing equivalent service artificially
- **Damage cost avoided:** Cost of damages prevented by the service

Valuation Formula:

$$Value(R_s) = R_s \times P_r$$

where P_r is the price of the replaced or avoided service.

Example 4.11: Carbon sequestration quantification

A 1,000-hectare temperate forest:

Measurements: - GPP: 15 tC/ha/year (from eddy covariance) - R_a: 7 tC/ha/year (50% of GPP, typical for forests) - R_h: 6 tC/ha/year (from soil respiration measurements) - L: 0.5 tC/ha/year (small harvest)

Calculation: - NPP = GPP - R_a = 15 - 7 = 8 tC/ha/year - C_{seq} = NPP - R_h - L = 8 - 6 - 0.5 = 1.5 tC/ha/year - Total forest: 1,000 ha × 1.5 tC/ha/year = 1,500 tC/year

Valuation (at \$50/tCO_2): - CO_2 equivalent: 1,500 tC × 44/12 = 5,500 tCO_2/year - **Value:** 5,500 × \$50 = \$275,000/year

Example 4.12: Pollination service quantification

An almond orchard experiment:

Treatment	Yield (kg/ha)	Number of Plots
Open pollination	2,500	20
Excluded (no pollinators)	500	20

Analysis: - Pollination effect: 2,500 - 500 = 2,000 kg/ha - Percentage increase: (2,000/500) × 100% = 400% - Orchard area: 100 ha - **Total pollination service:** 100 ha × 2,000 kg/ha = 200,000 kg = 200 tonnes

Valuation (at \$4/kg): - **Value:** 200,000 kg × \$4/kg = \$800,000/year

Example 4.13: Water purification by wetland

A 50-hectare wetland receives agricultural runoff:

Inputs: - Water flow: 1,000,000 m^3/year - Nitrogen concentration in: 10 mg/L - Total N input: 10,000 kg/year

Wetland Performance: - Removal rate constant k: 0.05 /m - Average flow path L: 200 m - Removal efficiency: 1 - e^{-0.05×200} = 1 - e^{-10} ≈ 0.9999 ≈ 100%

Actually measured: - N concentration out: 2 mg/L - Total N output: 2,000 kg/year - **N removed:** 10,000 - 2,000 = 8,000 kg/year

Valuation (replacement cost of treatment plant): - Treatment cost: \$5/kg N removed - **Value:** 8,000 kg × \$5/kg = \$40,000/year

Example 4.14: Coastal protection by mangroves

A 1-km stretch of mangrove forest:

Storm Protection: - Wave height without mangroves: 2.0 m - Wave height with mangroves: 0.5 m - Wave attenuation: 75%

Economic Impact: - Protected infrastructure value: \$100 million - Annual storm probability: 5% - Expected annual damage without mangroves: \$100M × 5% × 20% = \$1 million - Expected annual damage with mangroves: \$100M × 5% × 5% = \$0.25 million - **Annual protection value:** \$1M - \$0.25M = \$0.75 million/year

Example 4.15: Air quality regulation by urban forest

A 100-hectare urban forest:

Pollutant Removal:

Pollutant	Removal (kg/ha/year)	Total (kg/year)	Health Cost (¿kg¿∨Value¿/year)	
PM2.5	5	500	1,000	500,000
NO_2	10	1,000	50	50,000
O_3	15	1,500	30	45,000
SO_2	8	800	40	32,000

Total Air Quality Service Value: \$627,000/year

Problem 4.11: Regulating service valuation (avoided cost)

Estimate the value of the water purification service of a 200-hectare wetland that removes 5,000 kg of nitrogen per year. The cost of building and operating a water treatment plant that would provide the same level of purification is \$10 million capital cost (amortized over 20 years at 5% interest) plus \$50,000/year operating cost.

Calculate: a) Annual equivalent cost of treatment plant b) Value of wetland service c) Benefit-cost ratio of wetland conservation vs. treatment plant

Problem 4.12: Flood control service modeling

A 500-hectare coastal wetland reduces storm surge height by 0.5 meters. Without the wetland: - 1,000 homes would be flooded - Average damage per home: $100,000 - Storm probability: 10% per year

Calculate: a) Expected annual damage without wetland b) Expected annual damage with wetland (assume 50% damage reduction) c) Annual flood protection value d) Present value of protection over 50 years (discount rate 3%)

Problem 4.13: Carbon Sequestration Calculation

A grassland restoration project (200 hectares) has: - Year 0 soil carbon: 50 tC/ha - Year 10 soil carbon: 70 tC/ha - Biomass carbon accumulation: 2 tC/ha/year

Calculate: a) Average annual soil carbon sequestration (tC/ha/year) b) Total carbon sequestration (soil + biomass) over 10 years c) Value at $40/tCO_2$ (total over 10 years)

Problem 4.14: Pollination Service Dependency

A region has 10,000 hectares of pollinator-dependent crops: - 5,000 ha apples (dependency ratio: 0.65, yield 20 tonnes/ha, price $500/tonne) - 3,000 ha almonds (dependency ratio: 0.90, yield 2 tonnes/ha, price $4,000/tonne) - 2,000 ha blueberries (dependency ratio: 0.75, yield 5 tonnes/ha, price $3,000/tonne)

Dependency ratio = proportion of yield attributable to animal pollination.

Calculate: a) Total crop value b) Value attributable to pollination c) Value per hectare of pollination service

Problem 4.15: Water Flow Regulation

A forested watershed (5,000 ha) regulates water flow: - Peak flow with forest: 100 m³/s - Peak flow without forest (modeled): 200 m³/s - Downstream flood damage function: D = 0.001 × Q^2 (where Q is peak flow in m³/s, D in millions $)

Calculate: a) Flood damage with forest b) Flood damage without forest c) Annual flood damage avoided (assuming 20% probability of peak flow event) d) Value of flow regulation service

4.4 Cultural Services

Cultural services are the non-material benefits people obtain from ecosystems through spiritual enrichment, cognitive development, recreation, and aesthetic experiences.

Theorem 4.4: Non-Material Benefits Valuation

The quantification of cultural services requires specialized methods that elicit values for non-market goods, as these services typically do not have observable market prices.

Valuation Methods:

1. Revealed Preference Methods

These infer value from observed behavior:

a) Travel Cost Method (TCM):

$$V_{TCM}=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\int_{0}^{V_i} D(p)\,dp$$

where: - V_{TCM} = total consumer surplus (value of recreation) - V_i = number of visits from zone i - D(p) = demand function (visits as function of travel cost p)

Demand function estimation:

$$V_i=\beta_0+\beta_1 TC_i+\beta_2 Y_i+\beta_3 S_i+\epsilon_i$$

¿ $trip$ ¿ $-Y_i=incomeinzonei$ ¿where: - TC_i = travel cost from zone i () - S_i = substitute site availability - β coefficients estimated via regression

b) Hedonic Pricing Method (HPM):

$$P_h = \alpha_0 + \sum_{j=1}^{m} \alpha_j X_j + \sum_{k=1}^{l} \gamma_k E_k + \epsilon$$

where: - P_h = property price (\$) - X_j = structural characteristics (size, age, etc.) - E_k = environmental amenities (view, proximity to park, air quality) - γ_k = implicit price of environmental amenity k

Marginal willingness to pay for amenity k:

$$MWTP_k = \frac{\partial P_h}{\partial E_k} = \gamma_k$$

2. Stated Preference Methods

These directly ask people their willingness to pay:

a) Contingent Valuation Method (CVM):

$$WTP_i = \beta_0 + \beta_1 Y_i + \beta_2 E_i + \beta_3 A_i + \epsilon_i$$

¿ $year$ ¿ $- Y_i = income$ ¿where: - WTP_i = willingness to pay for individual i () - E_i = environmental attitude - A_i = age and other demographics

Aggregation:

$$Total\,Value = \sum_{i=1}^{N} WTP_i$$

where N is the affected population.

b) Choice Experiments:

Utility function:

$$U_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^{K} \beta_k X_{ijk} + \epsilon_{ij}$$

where: - U_{ij} = utility of alternative j for individual i - X_{ijk} = level of attribute k in alternative j - β_k = marginal utility of attribute k

Willingness to pay for attribute k:

$$WTP_k = \frac{-\beta_k}{\beta_{price}}$$

3. Social Media Analysis

Visitation proxy:

$$V_{site} = \alpha \times Photos_{site}$$

where: - V_{site} = estimated visitation - $Photos_{site}$ = number of geotagged photos (e.g., from Flickr, Instagram) - α = calibration constant (from sites with known visitation)

Cultural value index:

$$CVI = \frac{Photos_{site}}{Area_{site}} \times \frac{Population_{nearby}}{Distance_{avg}}$$

Proof of Consumer Surplus in TCM:

Proposition: Consumer surplus equals the area under the demand curve above the price

Proof: - Let D(p) be the demand function (visits as function of travel cost p) - For a small price increase dp, the loss in consumer surplus is D(p) × dp - Integrating from current price p_0 to the choke price p (where D(p*) = 0): - CS = $\int_{p_0}$^{p*} D(p) dp - This is the area under the demand curve above the current price - It represents the total value visitors receive above what they pay* ∎

Challenges in Cultural Service Valuation:

- **Non-use values:** Existence, bequest, option values
- **Embedding effects:** Part-whole bias in stated preference
- **Strategic bias:** Respondents may overstate or understate WTP
- **Information bias:** Respondents may not understand the good being valued
- **Hypothetical bias:** Stated WTP may differ from actual WTP

Quality Criteria:

16. **Validity:** Does the method measure what it claims to measure?

17. **Reliability:** Are results consistent across studies?

18. **Accuracy:** Are estimates close to true values?

19. **Precision:** How large are confidence intervals?

Example 4.16: Recreation value (Travel Cost Method)

A national park receives visitors from different zones:

Zone	Distance (km)	Travel Cost ($/trip)	Visits (000s/year)	Population (000s)
1	50	20	100	500
2	100	40	60	400
3	200	80	20	300
4	400	160	5	200

Demand Function Estimation:

Visit rate (visits per 1000 population) = $\beta_0 + \beta_1 \times$ Travel Cost

Zone	Visit Rate (per 1000)	Travel Cost
1	200	20
2	150	40
3	67	80
4	25	160

Regression: Visit Rate = 220 - 1.25 × Travel Cost ($R^2 = 0.98$)

Consumer Surplus per Visit: - Choke price (where visits = 0): 220/1.25 = $176 - Average travel cost: (20+40+80+160)/4 = $75 - **CS per visit:** (176 - 75)/2 = $50.50 (area of triangle)

Total Annual Value: - Total visits: 185,000 - **Total value:** 185,000 × $50.50 = $9,342,500/year

Example 4.17: Aesthetic value (Hedonic Pricing)

A hedonic pricing study of 500 houses near a lake:

Regression Results:

Price = \$200,000 + \$50,000 × (Bedrooms) + \$30,000 × (Bathrooms) + \$80,000 × (Lake View) - \$5,000 × (Age)

Interpretation: - A lake view increases property value by \$80,000 - 200 houses have lake views - **Total capitalized aesthetic value:** 200 × \$80,000 = \$16,000,000

Annual flow value (at 5% discount rate): - Annual value = \$16,000,000 × 0.05 = \$800,000/year

Example 4.18: Contingent Valuation for existence value

A CVM study for Giant Panda conservation:

Survey Results (n=1,000): - Mean WTP: \$25/household/year - Median WTP: \$15/household/year - % willing to pay >\$0: 75%

Aggregation: - Relevant population: 100 million households - Conservative estimate (median): \$15/household/year - Participation rate: 75% - **Total existence value:** 100M × 0.75 × \$15 = \$1.125 billion/year

Example 4.19: Choice Experiment for wetland attributes

Respondents choose between wetland restoration scenarios:

Attribute	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
Bird species	50	75	100
Water quality	Fair	Good	Excellent
Public access	No	Limited	Full
Cost (\$/household/year)	0	50	100

Utility Function Results: - β_{birds} = 0.02 (per species) - β_{water_good} = 1.5, $\beta_{water\_excellent}$ = 3.0 - $\beta_{access\_limited}$ = 1.0, β_{access_full} = 2.0 - β_{cost} = -0.05 (per dollar)

WTP Calculations: - WTP for 1 additional bird species: 0.02/0.05 = $0.40/species - WTP for excellent vs. fair water: 3.0/0.05 = $60/household/year - WTP for full vs. no access: 2.0/0.05 = $40/household/year

Example 4.20: Social Media Analysis

A study of 50 national parks:

Data: - Park A: 10,000 geotagged photos, 1,000,000 recorded visits - Park B: 5,000 geotagged photos, ? visits (unknown)

Calibration: - α = 1,000,000 / 10,000 = 100 visits per photo

Estimation for Park B: - Estimated visits = 5,000 × 100 = 500,000 visits/year

Cultural Value Estimation: - Average value per visit (from TCM studies): $50 - **Estimated cultural value of Park B:** 500,000 × $50 = $25 million/year

Problem 4.16: Cultural service assessment survey

Design a survey to assess the aesthetic value of a scenic mountain landscape. Your survey should: a) Define the good being valued (be specific) b) Choose an elicitation format (open-ended, dichotomous choice, payment card) c) Specify the payment vehicle (tax, entrance fee, donation) d) Include at least 5 questions e) Describe how you would analyze the data to estimate total value

Problem 4.17: Contingent valuation for existence value

Design a contingent valuation study to estimate the "existence value" of the African elephant. Address: a) Survey design (scenario description, payment vehicle, elicitation format) b) Potential biases (strategic, information, hypothetical, embedding) c) Mitigation strategies for each bias d) Sample size and sampling strategy e) Aggregation method (mean vs. median, participation rate)

Problem 4.18: Travel Cost Method Application

A state park receives visitors from 5 zones:

Zone	Distance (miles)	Visits (per 1000 pop)	Population (000s)	Income ($/year)
1	25	150	100	50,000
2	50	100	200	55,000
3	100	60	300	60,000
4	150	30	400	65,000
5	200	15	500	70,000

Assume travel cost = $0.50/mile (round trip).

a) Calculate travel cost for each zone

b) Estimate demand function: Visit Rate = $\beta_0 + \beta_1 \times$ Travel Cost

c) Calculate consumer surplus per visit

d) Calculate total annual recreation value

Problem 4.19: Hedonic Pricing Analysis

A dataset of 200 houses near a river shows:

Variable	Coefficient	Std. Error
Bedrooms	40,000	5,000
Square feet	150	20
Age	-2,000	500
River view	100,000	15,000
Distance to river (km)	-10,000	2,000

a) Interpret the coefficient on “River view”

b) Calculate the implicit price of being 1 km closer to the river

c) If 50 houses have river views, what is the total capitalized value?

d) Convert to annual flow value (assume 4% discount rate)

Problem 4.20: Benefit Transfer

You need to value recreation at a new lake but have no budget for a primary study. You find a TCM study from a similar lake that estimated consumer surplus of $40/visit.

The new lake is expected to receive 100,000 visits/year. The study lake: - Had 80,000 visits/year - Average income at study lake: $50,000 - Average income at new lake: $60,000

a) Calculate unadjusted benefit transfer value

b) Adjust for income difference (assume income elasticity of 0.8)

c) Discuss limitations of this approach

d) What additional information would improve the estimate?

4.5 Supplementary Problems

- Discuss the challenges of applying the CICES framework in a marine environment. How would you classify services like fish nursery habitat or coastal protection by coral reefs?

- Compare and contrast the methods for quantifying provisioning and regulating services. Why are regulating services generally harder to quantify?

- Explain the concept of "existence value" and how it relates to cultural ecosystem services. Why is existence value important for biodiversity conservation?

- Discuss the concept of "ecosystem disservices" (e.g., pests, diseases, natural hazards, allergens). How can these be incorporated into an ecosystem service assessment? Should they be subtracted from service values?

- Explain the "cascade model" of ecosystem services (Haines-Young & Potschin), which links ecosystem structures and functions through to human well-being. Draw a diagram to illustrate the model for a specific service (e.g., water purification by a wetland).

4.6 References

[1] Haines-Young, R., & Potschin, M. (2018). *Common International Classification of Ecosystem Services (CICES) V5.1*. European Environment Agency.

[2] Costanza, R., d'Arge, R., de Groot, R., Farber, S., Grasso, M., Hannon, B., … & van den Belt, M. (1997). The value of the world's ecosystem services and natural capital. *Nature*, 387(6630), 253-260.

[3] Daniel, T. C., Muhar, A., Arnberger, A., Aznar, O., Boyd, J. W., Chan, K. M., … & von der Dunk, A. (2012). Contributions of cultural services to the ecosystem services agenda. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 109(23), 8812-8819.

[4] TEEB. (2010). *The Economics of Ecosystems and Biodiversity: Mainstreaming the Economics of Nature: A synthesis of the approach, conclusions and recommendations of TEEB*.

[5] Potschin, M. and Haines-Young, R. (2011). Ecosystem Services: Exploring a geographical perspective. *Progress in Physical Geography*, 35(5), 575-594.

[6] Champ, P. A., Boyle, K. J., & Brown, T. C. (Eds.). (2017). *A primer on nonmarket valuation* (Vol. 13). Springer.

[7] Freeman III, A. M., Herriges, J. A., & Kling, C. L. (2014). *The measurement of environmental and resource values: theory and methods*. RFF Press.

[8] Johnston, R. J., Boyle, K. J., Adamowicz, W., Bennett, J., Brouwer, R., Cameron, T. A., … & Vossler, C. A. (2017). Contemporary guidance for stated preference studies. *Journal of the Association of Environmental and Resource Economists*, 4(2), 319-405.

PART II: MEASUREMENT AND MONITORING METHODS

Chapter 5: Field Survey Methods

Field surveys are the cornerstone of biodiversity assessment, providing the raw data for many of the metrics and models discussed in this book. This chapter covers the fundamental principles and techniques for designing and implementing effective field surveys.

5.1 Sampling Design

A well-designed sampling strategy is crucial for obtaining representative and unbiased data. The choice of sampling design depends on the research question, the characteristics of the study area, and the resources available.

Theorem 5.1: Statistical Power and Sample Size

Statement: The required sample size (n) to achieve a desired level of statistical power (1-β) for detecting an effect of a certain size (d) in a two-sample comparison is given by:

$$n = 2¿¿$$

where: - $Z_{\frac{\alpha}{2}}$ is the critical value of the standard normal distribution for significance level α/2 — Z_{β} is the critical value for the desired power (1-β) — σ^2 is the pooled variance of the two populations - d is the minimum detectable effect size (difference in means)

Proof:

For a two-sample t-test with equal variances, the test statistic is:

$$t = \frac{\acute{X}_1 - \acute{X}_2}{\sigma\sqrt{\frac{2}{n}}}$$

Under the null hypothesis (H_0: $\mu_1 = \mu_2$), this follows a t-distribution with 2n-2 degrees of freedom.

Under the alternative hypothesis (H_1: $\mu_1 - \mu_2 = d$), the non-centrality parameter is:

$$\delta = \frac{d}{\sigma \sqrt{\frac{2}{n}}}$$

For the test to have power (1-β), we require:

$$\delta \geq Z_{\frac{\alpha}{2}} + Z_{\beta}$$

Substituting and solving for n:

$$\frac{d}{\sigma \sqrt{\frac{2}{n}}} = Z_{\frac{\alpha}{2}} + Z_{\beta}$$

$$\frac{d^2}{\sigma^2 \cdot \frac{2}{n}} = \text{¿}$$

$$n = 2\text{¿¿}$$

■

Properties:

- **Monotonicity:** Sample size increases with desired power (1-β)
- **Inverse relationship:** Sample size decreases with larger effect size d
- **Variance dependence:** Sample size increases linearly with variance σ^2
- **Significance level:** Smaller α requires larger n

Common Values: - For $\alpha = 0.05$ (two-tailed): $Z_{0.025} = 1.96$ - For power = 0.80: $Z_{0.20} = 0.84$ - For power = 0.90: $Z_{0.10} = 1.28$

Effect Size Classification (Cohen's d): - Small: d = 0.2 - Medium: d = 0.5 - Large: d = 0.8

Example 5.1: Sample size for detecting 20% difference

Problem: Calculate the required sample size to detect a 20% difference in the mean abundance of a particular insect species between two sites, with $\alpha = 0.05$ and power = 0.8. Assume the mean abundance is 25 individuals per trap with standard deviation $\sigma = 5$.

Solution:

Given: - Mean = 25, so 20% difference: d = 0.20 × 25 = 5 - σ = 5 - α = 0.05 → $Z_{0.025}$ = 1.96 - Power = 0.80 → $Z_{0.20}$ = 0.84

$$n = 2¿¿$$

Round up: **n = 16 samples per site**

Example 5.2: Stratified random sampling

To estimate the total biomass in a forest with two distinct habitat types (deciduous and coniferous), a stratified random sampling design is more efficient than simple random sampling.

$\acute{y}_{st} = W_1 \acute{y}_1 + W_2 \acute{y}_2$**Procedure: 1. Divide forest into strata by habitat type 2. Determine stratum weights: $W_1 = A_1/A_{total}$, $W_2 = A_2/A_{total}$ 3. Allocate samples proportionally: $n_1 = n \times W_1$, $n_2 = n \times W_2$ 4. Estimate overall mean:**

Variance reduction:

$$Var(\acute{y}_{st}) \leq Var(\acute{y}_{srs})$$

with equality only when strata are homogeneous.

Example 5.3: Systematic sampling for rare species

To map the distribution of a rare plant species across a 10 km² area:

- Create grid with 100m × 100m cells (1000 cells total)
- Sample at center of each cell
- Record presence/absence and abundance
- Estimate occupancy: $\hat{p} = \frac{n_{occupied}}{n_{total}}$

Advantage: Even spatial coverage **Disadvantage:** Potential bias if spatial pattern matches grid periodicity

Example 5.4: Power analysis for conservation

A conservation project aims to detect a 30% increase in butterfly abundance after habitat restoration.

Given: - Baseline mean = 50 butterflies - Target mean = 65 butterflies (d = 15) - σ = 20 - α = 0.05, power = 0.90

$$n = 2¿¿$$

Required: n = 38 sampling plots per treatment

Example 5.5: Adaptive sampling

For highly aggregated species (e.g., colonial organisms), adaptive cluster sampling is more efficient:

- Initial random sample
- If abundance > threshold, sample neighboring units
- Continue until no new units exceed threshold
- Use Hansen-Hurwitz estimator for unbiased abundance

Problem 5.1: Sample size determination

Calculate the required sample size to detect a 15% difference in the mean density of a particular bird species between two habitats, with a significance level of 0.05 and a power of 0.85. Assume the standard deviation of the density is 3 birds per hectare, and the mean density in the control habitat is 20 birds per hectare.

Problem 5.2: Choosing a sampling design

You are tasked with assessing the impact of a new hiking trail on the abundance of ground-nesting birds in a national park. The trail runs through a forest, and you expect the impact to be greatest near the trail and to decrease with distance from the trail. What sampling design would you use to test this hypothesis? Justify your choice and describe how you would allocate sampling effort.

Problem 5.3: Stratification efficiency

A forest consists of 60% oak (σ_1 = 10 kg/m²) and 40% pine (σ_2 = 15 kg/m²) stands. Compare the variance of stratified random sampling (n = 100, proportional allocation) versus simple random sampling. Assume overall variance σ^2 = 180.

Problem 5.4: Optimal allocation

For the forest in Problem 5.3, derive the optimal (Neyman) allocation that minimizes variance for a fixed total sample size. How many samples should be allocated to each stratum?

Problem 5.5: Type I and Type II errors

Explain the relationship between sample size, Type I error (α), and Type II error (β). If you decrease α from 0.05 to 0.01 while keeping power constant, how does the required sample size change?

5.2 Quadrat and Transect Methods

Quadrat and transect methods are widely used for sampling plants and other sessile or slow-moving organisms.

Theorem 5.2: Area-Based Sampling and Density Estimation

Statement: The density (ρ) of a species can be estimated from quadrat sampling using the formula:

$$\hat{\rho} = \frac{1}{nA} \sum_{i=1}^{n} y_i$$

where: - y_i is the number of individuals in the i-th quadrat - n is the number of quadrats - A is the area of each quadrat (assumed constant)

The variance of this estimator is:

$$Var(\hat{\rho}) = \frac{\sigma^2}{nA^2}$$

where $\sigma^2 = Var(y_i)$ is the variance of counts per quadrat.

Proof of Unbiasedness:

The expected value of the estimator is:

$$E[\hat{\rho}] = E\left[\frac{1}{nA}\sum_{i=1}^{n} y_i\right] = \frac{1}{nA}\sum_{i=1}^{n} E[y_i]$$

If quadrats are randomly placed, $E[y_i] = \rho A$ for all i, thus:

$$E[\hat{\rho}] = \frac{1}{nA} \times n \times \rho A = \rho$$

Therefore, $\hat{\rho}$ is an unbiased estimator of density. ■

Proof of Variance:

Since quadrats are independent:

$$Var(\hat{\rho}) = Var\left(\frac{1}{nA}\sum_{i=1}^{n} y_i\right) = \frac{1}{n^2 A^2}\sum_{i=1}^{n} Var(y_i) = \frac{n\sigma^2}{n^2 A^2} = \frac{\sigma^2}{nA^2}$$

■

Confidence Interval:

The 95% confidence interval for density is:

$$\hat{\rho} \pm t_{n-1,0.025} \times \frac{s}{\sqrt{n}\,A}$$

where s is the sample standard deviation of counts.

Optimal Quadrat Size:

The coefficient of variation (CV) of the estimator is:

$$CV(\hat{\rho}) = \frac{\sqrt{Var(\hat{\rho})}}{\rho} = \frac{\sigma}{\rho A \sqrt{n}}$$

For a fixed total sampling area (nA = constant), CV is minimized when quadrat size A is chosen such that the variance-to-mean ratio is minimized.

Example 5.6: Vegetation surveys with quadrats

In a grassland ecosystem, 25 quadrats of 1m × 1m are randomly placed. The counts of a particular grass species are:

[12, 8, 15, 10, 9, 14, 11, 13, 7, 16, 10, 12, 9, 11, 14, 8, 13, 15, 10, 12, 11, 9, 14, 13, 10]

Calculate density:

$$\hat{\rho} = \frac{1}{25 \times 1} \sum y_i = \frac{285}{25} = 11.4 \text{ plants/m}^2$$

Calculate variance:

$$s^2 = \frac{1}{24} \sum ¿$$

$$Var(\hat{\rho}) = \frac{6.5}{25 \times 1^2} = 0.26$$

95% CI:

$$11.4 \pm 2.064 \times \frac{\sqrt{6.5}}{\sqrt{25 \times 1}} = 11.4 \pm 1.05 = [10.35, 12.45]$$

Example 5.7: Transects for studying gradients

To study elevation effects on plant communities (0-1000m elevation):

- Establish 10 transects perpendicular to elevation gradient
- Place 1m² quadrats every 100m elevation (11 quadrats per transect)
- Record species composition and abundance
- Analyze using regression: Abundance ~ Elevation

Model:

$$y_{ij} = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_j + \epsilon_{ij}$$

where y_{ij} is abundance in quadrat i at elevation x_j.

Example 5.8: Belt transect for mobile species

For surveying lizards along a 100m transect with 2m width:

20. Total area surveyed: 100m × 2m = 200m²
21. Lizards observed: 15
22. Estimated density: $\hat{\rho}=\frac{15}{200}=0.075$ lizards/m²

Variance (assuming Poisson):

$$Var(\hat{\rho})=\frac{\hat{\rho}}{A}=\frac{0.075}{200}=0.000375$$

Example 5.9: Quadrat size optimization

Testing quadrat sizes (0.25m², 1m², 4m²) for shrub density:

Quadrat Size	Mean Count	Variance	CV
0.25m²	2.5	3.0	0.69
1m²	10.0	15.0	0.39
4m²	40.0	80.0	0.22

Optimal: 4m² quadrats (lowest CV)

Example 5.10: Stratified quadrat sampling

Forest with 70% mature (high density) and 30% regenerating (low density) areas:

23. Mature: n_1 = 35 quadrats, $\acute{y}_1=25$ plants/m²
24. Regenerating: n_2 = 15 quadrats, $\acute{y}_2=8$ plants/m²

Stratified estimate:

$$\hat{\rho}_{st}=0.7\times 25+0.3\times 8=17.5+2.4=19.9 \text{ plants/m}^2$$

Problem 5.6: Transect analysis

Given data from a line transect survey of a plant community with perpendicular distances, calculate the density of each species using the following data:

Species A: distances (m) = [0.5, 1.2, 0.8, 2.1, 1.5, 0.3, 1.8, 2.5, 1.1, 0.7] Species B: distances (m) = [0.2, 0.9, 1.4, 0.6, 1.9, 0.4, 1.2, 2.3, 0.8, 1.6]

Transect length = 100m, truncation distance = 3m.

Problem 5.7: Comparing quadrat sizes

You are studying a plant community with highly variable spatial distribution. Design an experiment to determine the optimal quadrat size. What criteria would you use? How would you balance precision, cost, and practicality?

Problem 5.8: Nested quadrats

Explain the concept of nested quadrats and how they can be used to study species-area relationships. Design a nested quadrat scheme with 4 size classes and explain how you would analyze the data.

Problem 5.9: Edge effects

Discuss how edge effects in quadrat sampling can bias density estimates. Propose a correction method for plants that overlap quadrat boundaries.

Problem 5.10: Transect orientation

For a habitat with strong environmental gradients (e.g., moisture, elevation), how should transects be oriented? Compare parallel versus perpendicular orientation relative to the gradient.

5.3 Mark-Recapture Methods

Mark-recapture methods are used to estimate the population size of mobile animals.

Theorem 5.3: Lincoln-Petersen Estimator

Statement: The Lincoln-Petersen estimator for closed populations is:

$$\hat{N} = \frac{M \times n}{m}$$

where: - M = number of individuals initially marked and released - n = total number of individuals captured in the second sample - m = number of marked individuals recaptured in the second sample

The bias-corrected (Chapman) estimator is:

$$\hat{N}_{Chapman} = \frac{(M+1)(n+1)}{m+1} - 1$$

The variance of the Chapman estimator is:

$$Var\left(\hat{N}_{Chapman}\right) = \frac{(M+1)(n+1)(M-m)(n-m)}{\text{¿¿}}$$

Assumptions:

- **Closed population:** No births, deaths, immigration, or emigration between samples
- **Equal catchability:** All individuals have equal probability of capture
- **Marks not lost:** Marks remain visible and identifiable
- **Marks don't affect behavior:** Marked individuals behave like unmarked ones
- **Independent samples:** Captures in second sample are independent of first

Proof of Estimator:

The probability of an individual being marked in the population is $\frac{M}{N}$.

In the second sample of size n, the expected number of marked individuals is:

$$E[m] = n \times \frac{M}{N}$$

Setting $m = E[m]$ and solving for N:

$$m = \frac{nM}{N} \Rightarrow \hat{N} = \frac{Mn}{m}$$

■

Proof of Bias:

The Lincoln-Petersen estimator is biased for small m. The Chapman estimator corrects this bias:

$$E\left[\widehat{N}_{Chapman}\right] \approx N$$

for $m \geq 7$. ■

Confidence Interval (Poisson approximation):

$$\widehat{N} \pm 1.96\sqrt{Var\left(\widehat{N}\right)}$$

Example 5.11: Population estimation of butterflies

Problem: 100 butterflies are captured, marked, and released. A week later, 150 butterflies are captured, of which 15 are marked. Estimate the population size.

Solution:

Using Chapman estimator:

$$\widehat{N} = \frac{(100+1)(150+1)}{15+1} - 1 = \frac{101 \times 151}{16} - 1 = 953.4 - 1 = 952$$

Variance:

$$Var\left(\widehat{N}\right) = \frac{101 \times 151 \times 85 \times 135}{16^2 \times 17} = \frac{175{,}361{,}775}{4{,}352} = 40{,}294$$

Standard error: $SE = \sqrt{40{,}294} = 201$

95% CI: $952 \pm 1.96 \times 201 = 952 \pm 394 = [558, 1346]$

Example 5.12: Violation of assumptions (trap-shyness)

In a study of field mice, marked mice are less likely to be recaptured (trap-shy).

Effect: If $p_{marked} < p_{unmarked}$, then m is smaller than expected, leading to **overestimation** of N.

Correction: Use models that account for behavioral response (e.g., Jolly-Seber model with trap response).

Example 5.13: Multiple recapture sessions

Three capture sessions with cumulative marking:

Session	Captured	Marked	Recaptured
1	50	50	-
2	60	110	12
3	55	165	18

Schnabel estimator:

$$\hat{N} = \frac{\sum_{i=2}^{k} M_i n_i}{\sum_{i=2}^{k} m_i} = \frac{110 \times 60 + 165 \times 55}{12 + 18} = \frac{15{,}675}{30} = 523$$

Example 5.14: Mark loss

If 10% of marks are lost between sessions:

Correction factor: $\lambda = 0.90$

Adjusted estimator: $\hat{N}_{adj} = \frac{\hat{N}}{\lambda} = \frac{952}{0.90} = 1058$

Example 5.15: Stratified mark-recapture

Population with two age classes (juvenile, adult):

25. Juveniles: $M_1 = 50$, $n_1 = 80$, $m_1 = 10$ □ $\hat{N}_1 = 400$
26. Adults: $M_2 = 60$, $n_2 = 70$, $m_2 = 15 \rightarrow \hat{N}_2 = 280$

Total: $\hat{N} = 400 + 280 = 680$

Problem 5.11: Mark-recapture calculation

In a study of a fish population, 500 fish are marked and released. A subsequent sample of 400 fish contains 20 marked individuals. Calculate: a) The Chapman estimate of population size b) The variance and 95% confidence interval c) The minimum detectable population change (power = 0.80, $\alpha = 0.05$)

Problem 5.12: The Schnabel method

The Schnabel method uses multiple capture sessions. Given the following data:

Session	M_i	n_i	m_i
1	0	100	-
2	100	120	15
3	205	110	25
4	290	95	30

Calculate the Schnabel estimate of population size and its variance.

Problem 5.13: Assumption violations

For each of the following scenarios, identify which assumption of the Lincoln-Petersen method is violated and explain how it would bias the population estimate: a) Marked fish are more vulnerable to predation b) The study area experiences immigration during the study c) Tags fall off 20% of marked individuals d) Marked individuals become trap-happy

Problem 5.14: Jolly-Seber model

Research the Jolly-Seber model for open populations. How does it differ from the Lincoln-Petersen method? What additional parameters does it estimate?

Problem 5.15: Sample size for mark-recapture

Derive a formula for the minimum number of individuals that should be marked (M) to achieve a desired coefficient of variation (CV) for the population estimate, assuming you can control the second sample size (n).

5.4 Point Count and Distance Sampling

Point count and distance sampling methods are commonly used for surveying birds and other mobile and conspicuous animals.

Theorem 5.4: Distance Sampling and Density Estimation

Statement: In distance sampling, the density (D) of a population is estimated as:

$$\hat{D} = \frac{n}{2L\mu}$$

for line transects, or

$$\hat{D} = \frac{n}{k\pi\mu^2}$$

for point transects, where: - n = number of detected individuals - L = total length of line transects - k = number of point transects - μ = effective detection radius — $\mu = \int_0^w g(x)\,dx$ where $g(x)$ is the detection function

The detection function $g(x)$ satisfies: 1. $g(0)=1$ (perfect detection at distance 0) 2. $g(x)$ is non-increasing 3. $g(w)\approx 0$ (truncation at distance w)

Common Detection Functions:

- **Half-normal:**

$$g(x) = \exp\left(\frac{-x^2}{2\sigma^2}\right)$$

- **Hazard-rate:**

$$g(x)=1-\exp\left(-\left(\frac{x}{b}\right)^{-c}\right)$$

- **Uniform with cosine adjustments:**

$$g(x)=1+\sum_{j=1}^{J} a_j \cos\left(\frac{j\pi x}{w}\right)$$

Proof of Density Estimator (Line Transect):

The probability of detecting an individual within distance w of the transect is:

$$P_a=\frac{1}{w}\int_0^w g(x)\,dx=\frac{\mu}{w}$$

The expected number of detections is:

$$E[n]=D\times 2Lw\times P_a=D\times 2L\mu$$

Solving for D:

$$\widehat{D}=\frac{n}{2L\mu}$$

■

Variance Estimation:

The variance of $\widehat{D}$ is estimated using the delta method:

$$Var(\widehat{D})\approx\widehat{D}^2\left[\frac{Var(n)}{n^2}+\frac{Var(\hat{\mu})}{\hat{\mu}^2}\right]$$

where $Var(\hat{\mu})$ is obtained from the likelihood fit of the detection function.

Model Selection:

Detection functions are compared using Akaike Information Criterion (AIC):

$$AIC=-2\log(L)+2K$$

where L is the likelihood and K is the number of parameters. Choose the model with lowest AIC.

Example 5.16: Bird surveys using point counts

Data: 10 point counts, 5-minute duration each. Total detections: 45 birds.

Distance data (m): [5, 12, 8, 15, 22, 18, 10, 25, 30, 7, 14, 20, 11, 28, 16, 19, 9, 23, 13, 27, 6, 17, 21, 24, 26, 8, 12, 15, 19, 22, 10, 14, 18, 25, 29, 7, 11, 16, 20, 23, 9, 13, 17, 21, 24]

Fit half-normal detection function:

Maximum likelihood estimate: $\hat{\sigma} = 15.2$ m

Effective detection radius:

$$\hat{\mu} = \int_0^{30} \exp\left(\frac{-x^2}{2 \times 15.2^2}\right) dx = 13.5 \text{ m}$$

Density estimate:

$$\widehat{D} = \frac{45}{10 \times \pi \times 13.5^2} = \frac{45}{5{,}726} = 0.00786 \text{ birds/m}^2 = 78.6 \text{ birds/ha}$$

Example 5.17: Line transects for marine mammals

Survey: 500 km of transect, 125 dolphin sightings, truncation at 1000m.

Hazard-rate model: $\hat{b} = 450$ m, $\hat{c} = 3.2$

Effective strip half-width:

$$\hat{\mu} = \int_0^{1000} \left[1 - \exp\left(-\left(\frac{x}{450}\right)^{-3.2}\right)\right] dx = 387 \text{ m}$$

Density:

$$\widehat{D} = \frac{125}{2 \times 500{,}000 \times 387} = 0.000323 \text{ dolphins/m}^2$$

Abundance in 10,000 km² area:

$$\widehat{N} = 0.000323 \times 10^{10} = 3{,}230 \text{ dolphins}$$

Example 5.18: Stratified distance sampling

Forest with 2 strata:

Stratum 1 (60% of area): - 20 transects, 100m each, 80 detections — $\hat{\mu}_1 = 25$ m — $\hat{D}_1 = \frac{80}{2 \times 2000 \times 25} = 0.0008$ birds/m²

Stratum 2 (40% of area): - 15 transects, 100m each, 45 detections — $\hat{\mu}_2 = 20$ m — $\hat{D}_2 = \frac{45}{2 \times 1500 \times 20} = 0.00075$ birds/m²

Overall density:

$$\hat{D} = 0.6 \times 0.0008 + 0.4 \times 0.00075 = 0.00078 \text{ birds/m}^2$$

Example 5.19: Detection function comparison

Fitting 3 models to the same dataset:

Model	Parameters	AIC	Δ AIC
Half-normal	σ = 18.5	245.3	0.0
Hazard-rate	b = 22.1, c = 2.8	247.1	1.8
Uniform + cosine	a_1 = 0.15	249.5	4.2

Best model: Half-normal (lowest AIC)

Example 5.20: Covariates in detection functions

Including observer experience as covariate:

$$\sigma(z) = \exp(\beta_0 + \beta_1 z)$$

where z = years of experience.

Estimates: $\hat{\beta}_0 = 2.5$, $\hat{\beta}_1 = 0.08$

For experienced observer (z = 10): $\hat{\sigma} = \exp(2.5 + 0.8) = 27.1$ m For novice (z = 1): $\hat{\sigma} = \exp(2.5 + 0.08) = 13.5$ m

Problem 5.16: Distance sampling analysis

Given the following distance data from a point count survey of birds (distances in meters):

[3, 7, 12, 5, 18, 9, 22, 14, 28, 11, 16, 25, 8, 19, 31, 13, 21, 6, 24, 15, 29, 10, 17, 26, 4, 20, 27, 12, 23, 14]

e) Fit a half-normal detection function to the data

f) Calculate the effective detection radius

g) Estimate the density (assume 15 point counts)

h) Calculate the 95% confidence interval

Problem 5.17: Comparing point counts and line transects

Compare and contrast the advantages and disadvantages of using point counts versus line transects for surveying birds in: a) Dense tropical forest b) Open grassland c) Mountainous terrain

Which method would you choose for each habitat and why?

Problem 5.18: Truncation distance

Explain the purpose of truncating distance data in distance sampling. How would you choose an appropriate truncation distance? What are the consequences of truncating too close or too far?

Problem 5.19: Cluster size

In distance sampling of marine mammals, animals often occur in groups (clusters). Explain how to modify the density estimator to account for cluster size. Derive the formula for density when cluster size varies.

Problem 5.20: Double observer method

Research the double observer method for estimating detection probability at distance zero, g(0). How does this method improve upon standard distance sampling? What are its assumptions?

5.5 Supplementary Problems

- Compare and contrast the assumptions of the Lincoln-Petersen and Jolly-Seber models for mark-recapture analysis. Under what conditions would you choose one over the other?

- Design a comprehensive field survey to assess the biodiversity of a river ecosystem, incorporating at least three different sampling methods for different taxonomic groups (e.g., fish, invertebrates, plants). Justify your choice of methods and explain how you would integrate the data.

- Discuss the potential sources of bias in a citizen science-based biodiversity monitoring program and how they can be minimized. Consider issues of spatial coverage, observer skill, and species detectability.

- Explain the concept of "detection probability" and why it is a critical parameter to estimate in most wildlife surveys. What happens if you ignore it? Provide a quantitative example showing the bias.

- Discuss the ethical considerations of field survey methods, particularly those involving the capture, handling, and marking of wild animals. What are the key principles of ethical animal research (the 3Rs)?

- Derive the variance formula for the stratified estimator of density when using quadrat sampling with proportional allocation. Show that it is always less than or equal to the variance of simple random sampling.

- For distance sampling, prove that the half-normal detection function $g(x) = \exp\left(\frac{-x^2}{2\sigma^2}\right)$ satisfies all three required properties of a detection function.

- Design a power analysis for a before-after-control-impact (BACI) study to detect the effect of a new road on wildlife abundance. What sample sizes would be required for different effect sizes?
- Explain how occupancy modeling differs from traditional abundance estimation. Under what circumstances would occupancy be preferred? Derive the basic occupancy model likelihood.
- Compare removal sampling, depletion methods, and mark-recapture for estimating fish populations in a stream. What are the assumptions and limitations of each method?

5.6 References

[1] Krebs, C. J. (1999). *Ecological methodology* (2nd ed.). Benjamin Cummings.

[2] Buckland, S. T., Anderson, D. R., Burnham, K. P., Laake, J. L., Borchers, D. L., & Thomas, L. (2001). *Introduction to distance sampling: estimating abundance of biological populations*. Oxford University Press.

[3] Williams, B. K., Nichols, J. D., & Conroy, M. J. (2002). *Analysis and management of animal populations*. Academic Press.

[4] Schnabel, Z. E. (1938). The estimation of the total fish population of a lake. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, 45(6), 348-352.

[5] Chapman, D. G. (1951). Some properties of the hypergeometric distribution with applications to zoological sample censuses. *University of California Publications in Statistics*, 1, 131-160.

[6] Seber, G. A. F. (1982). *The estimation of animal abundance and related parameters* (2nd ed.). Griffin.

[7] Buckland, S. T., Rexstad, E. A., Marques, T. A., & Oedekoven, C. S. (2015). *Distance sampling: methods and applications*. Springer.

[8] The 3Rs: Replacement, Reduction and Refinement. National Centre for the Replacement, Refinement and Reduction of Animals in Research. https://www.nc3rs.org.uk/the-3rs

[9] Cohen, J. (1988). *Statistical power analysis for the behavioral sciences* (2nd ed.). Lawrence Erlbaum Associates.

[10] Thomas, L., Buckland, S. T., Rexstad, E. A., Laake, J. L., Strindberg, S., Hedley, S. L., … & Burnham, K. P. (2010). Distance software: design and analysis of distance sampling surveys for estimating population size. *Journal of Applied Ecology*, 47(1), 5-14.

Chapter 6: Remote Sensing and Spatial Analysis

Remote sensing technologies offer a powerful lens to monitor biodiversity and ecosystems over vast spatial scales and through time. By capturing data from satellites, aircraft, and drones, we can map habitats, assess ecosystem health, and analyze spatial patterns that are not apparent from the ground. This chapter explores key remote sensing techniques and spatial analysis methods used in biodiversity accounting.

6.1 Satellite Imagery for Habitat Mapping

Satellite imagery provides a synoptic view of the Earth's surface, allowing for the classification and monitoring of different habitat types. Multispectral sensors on satellites capture information in different parts of the electromagnetic spectrum, which can be used to identify features on the ground.

Theorem 6.1: Spectral Indices and Vegetation Properties

Statement: The Normalized Difference Vegetation Index (NDVI) is defined as:

$$NDVI = \frac{\rho_{NIR} - \rho_{Red}}{\rho_{NIR} + \rho_{Red}}$$

where: - ρ_{NIR} is the reflectance in the near-infrared band (typically 0.7-1.1 μm) — ρ_{Red} is the reflectance in the red band (typically 0.6-0.7 μm)

Properties:

- **Range:** $-1 \leq NDVI \leq 1$
- **Vegetation:** $0.2 < NDVI < 0.9$ (higher values indicate healthier, denser vegetation)
- **Bare soil:** $-0.1 < NDVI < 0.2$
- **Water:** $NDVI < 0$
- **Clouds/snow:** $NDVI \approx 0$

Proof of Range:

Since reflectances are non-negative ($\rho_{NIR}, \rho_{Red} \geq 0$), we have:

Upper bound: When $\rho_{Red} = 0$ (perfect absorption in red):

$$NDVI = \frac{\rho_{NIR}}{\rho_{NIR}} = 1$$

Lower bound: When $\rho_{NIR} = 0$ (no NIR reflectance):

$$NDVI = \frac{-\rho_{Red}}{\rho_{Red}} = -1$$

General case: For any $\rho_{NIR}, \rho_{Red} \geq 0$:

$$-\rho_{Red} \leq \rho_{NIR} - \rho_{Red} \leq \rho_{NIR}$$

Dividing by $(\rho_{NIR} + \rho_{Red}) > 0$:

$$\frac{-\rho_{Red}}{\rho_{NIR} + \rho_{Red}} \leq NDVI \leq \frac{\rho_{NIR}}{\rho_{NIR} + \rho_{Red}}$$

Since $\rho_{Red} \leq \rho_{NIR} + \rho_{Red}$ and $\rho_{NIR} \leq \rho_{NIR} + \rho_{Red}$:

$$-1 \leq NDVI \leq 1$$

■

Rationale for NDVI:

Healthy vegetation has unique spectral properties: - **Red band absorption:** Chlorophyll strongly absorbs red light for photosynthesis - **NIR reflection:** Leaf cellular structure strongly reflects NIR radiation

The ratio $\frac{\rho_{NIR} - \rho_{Red}}{\rho_{NIR} + \rho_{Red}}$ amplifies this contrast while normalizing for: - Illumination differences - Atmospheric effects - Sensor calibration

Alternative Vegetation Indices:

- **Enhanced Vegetation Index (EVI):**

$$EVI = G \times \frac{\rho_{NIR} - \rho_{Red}}{\rho_{NIR} + C_1 \rho_{Red} - C_2 \rho_{Blue} + L}$$

where $G = 2.5$, $C_1 = 6$, $C_2 = 7.5$, $L = 1$ (constants optimized for atmospheric correction)

2. **Soil-Adjusted Vegetation Index (SAVI):**

$$SAVI = \frac{(1 + L)(\rho_{NIR} - \rho_{Red})}{\rho_{NIR} + \rho_{Red} + L}$$

where $L = 0.5$ for intermediate vegetation cover

c) **Normalized Difference Water Index (NDWI):**

$$NDWI = \frac{\rho_{Green} - \rho_{NIR}}{\rho_{Green} + \rho_{NIR}}$$

Relationship to Biophysical Parameters:

NDVI correlates with: - **Leaf Area Index (LAI):** $LAI \approx -\frac{\ln(1 - NDVI)}{k}$ where $k \approx 0.5$ - **Fraction of Photosynthetically Active Radiation (fPAR):** $fPAR \approx 1.24 \times NDVI - 0.168$ - **Biomass:** $Biomass \propto NDVI^{\alpha}$ where $\alpha \approx 1.5 - 2.5$

Example 6.1: NDVI analysis for deforestation detection

Data: Landsat 8 imagery of Amazon rainforest, two dates (2015 and 2020).

2015 measurements: - $\rho_{NIR} = 0.45$, $\rho_{Red} = 0.05$ — $NDVI_{2015} = \frac{0.45 - 0.05}{0.45 + 0.05} = \frac{0.40}{0.50} = 0.80$

2020 measurements (deforested area): - $\rho_{NIR} = 0.25$, $\rho_{Red} = 0.15$ — $NDVI_{2020} = \frac{0.25 - 0.15}{0.25 + 0.15} = \frac{0.10}{0.40} = 0.25$

Change: $\Delta NDVI = 0.25 - 0.80 = -0.55$ (significant decrease indicating forest loss)

Threshold for deforestation: $\Delta NDVI \leftarrow 0.3$

Example 6.2: EVI for high biomass tropical forests

Problem: NDVI saturates at high LAI (LAI > 3), losing sensitivity in dense forests.

Solution: Use EVI which remains sensitive up to LAI ≈ 6.

Comparison: - Dense forest: $NDVI = 0.85$, $EVI = 0.65$ - Very dense forest: $NDVI = 0.87$ (saturated), $EVI = 0.78$ (still sensitive)

Atmospheric correction: EVI's blue band term reduces aerosol effects in tropical regions.

Example 6.3: Time series analysis for phenology

Monthly NDVI for temperate deciduous forest:

Month	NDVI	Phenological Stage
Jan	0.15	Dormant
Apr	0.45	Leaf-out
Jul	0.75	Peak greenness
Oct	0.50	Senescence

Metrics: - **Start of Season (SOS):** Month when NDVI > 0.3 - **Peak of Season (POS):** Month of maximum NDVI - **End of Season (EOS):** Month when NDVI < 0.3 (post-peak)

Example 6.4: Habitat classification using multiple indices

Supervised classification with 4 indices:

Habitat	NDVI	EVI	NDWI	SAVI
Dense forest	0.78	0.65	-0.45	0.72
Grassland	0.45	0.38	-0.25	0.42
Wetland	0.35	0.28	0.15	0.32
Urban	0.18	0.12	-0.10	0.16

Classification accuracy: 92% (using Random Forest classifier)

Example 6.5: NDVI-based biomass estimation

Allometric relationship for grassland:

$$Biomass = 0.85 \times NDVI^{2.1} \times 1000 \text{ kg/ha}$$

Application: - $NDVI = 0.60$ → $Biomass = 0.85 \times 0.60^{2.1} \times 1000 = 295$ kg/ha — $NDVI = 0.75$ → $Biomass = 0.85 \times 0.75^{2.1} \times 1000 = 455$ kg/ha

Uncertainty: $\pm 15\%$ (from field validation)

Problem 6.1: Habitat classification

Given a multispectral Sentinel-2 image of a coastal area with the following band reflectances for 5 sample pixels:

Pixel	Blue	Green	Red	NIR
1	0.08	0.12	0.06	0.42
2	0.15	0.18	0.14	0.28
3	0.05	0.08	0.04	0.38
4	0.25	0.30	0.28	0.15
5	0.10	0.15	0.08	0.35

a) Calculate NDVI, EVI, and NDWI for each pixel

b) Classify each pixel as: mangrove forest, salt marsh, open water, or mudflat

c) Assess classification confidence based on index values

Problem 6.2: Unsupervised classification

Use k-means clustering (k=4) to classify the pixels from Problem 6.1 based on all four spectral bands. Compare the results with your supervised classification. Explain any discrepancies.

Problem 6.3: NDVI saturation

Derive the relationship between NDVI and LAI assuming Beer's Law for canopy reflectance:

$$\rho_{NIR} = \rho_{\infty,NIR}\left(1 - e^{-k \times LAI}\right)$$

$$\rho_{Red} = \rho_{\infty,Red}\, e^{-k \times LAI}$$

Show that NDVI saturates as LAI ∞.

Problem 6.4: Temporal change detection

Given NDVI time series for a forest plot (monthly, 2 years), design a change detection algorithm to identify: a) Gradual degradation (slow NDVI decline) b) Abrupt disturbance (sudden NDVI drop) c) Seasonal variation (cyclic pattern)

Problem 6.5: Atmospheric correction

Explain why atmospheric correction is necessary for multi-temporal NDVI analysis. How would aerosol optical depth (AOD) affect NDVI values? Propose a simple atmospheric correction method.

6.2 LiDAR and 3D Habitat Structure

Light Detection and Ranging (LiDAR) is an active remote sensing technology that uses laser pulses to measure distances and create detailed 3D models of the Earth's surface. LiDAR is particularly useful for characterizing the vertical structure of vegetation, which is an important component of habitat quality.

Theorem 6.2: Canopy Height Models and Error Propagation

Statement: A Canopy Height Model (CHM) represents the height of vegetation above ground and is calculated as:

$$CHM(x,y) = DSM(x,y) - DTM(x,y)$$

where: - $DSM(x,y)$ = Digital Surface Model (elevation of first returns, including vegetation) — $DTM(x,y)$ = Digital Terrain Model (bare earth elevation) — (x,y) = horizontal coordinates

Error Propagation:

If DSM and DTM have independent errors with variances σ^2_{DSM} and σ^2_{DTM}, then:

$$\sigma_{CHM}^{2} = \sigma_{DSM}^{2} + \sigma_{DTM}^{2}$$

Proof:

Since $CHM = DSM - DTM$ and errors are independent:

$$Var(CHM) = Var(DSM - DTM) = Var(DSM) + Var(-DTM) = Var(DSM) + Var(DTM)$$

Therefore:

$$\sigma_{CHM} = \sqrt{\sigma_{DSM}^{2} + \sigma_{DTM}^{2}}$$

■

Typical Errors: - Airborne LiDAR: $\sigma_{DSM} \approx 0.10$ m, $\sigma_{DTM} \approx 0.15$ m — $\sigma_{CHM} = \sqrt{0.10^{2} + 0.15^{2}} = 0.18$ m

Derived Metrics from CHM:

- **Mean Canopy Height:**

$$\acute{h} = \frac{1}{A} \int \int_{A} CHM(x, y)\, dx\, dy$$

- **Canopy Cover (%):**

$$CC = \frac{A_{CHM > h_{threshold}}}{A_{total}} \times 100\%$$

where $h_{threshold}$ = 2m (typical minimum tree height)

c) **Canopy Roughness (standard deviation):**

$$\sigma_{h} = \sqrt{\frac{1}{A} \int \int_{A} \text{¿¿¿}}$$

d) **Vertical Complexity Index:**

$$VCI = \frac{\sigma_{h}}{\acute{h}}$$

Biomass Estimation from CHM:

Allometric relationship:

$$AGB = \alpha \times \acute{h}^{\beta}$$

where: - AGB = Above-Ground Biomass (Mg/ha) — α, β = calibration parameters (species/region specific) - Typical values: $\alpha \approx 0.5 - 2.0$, $\beta \approx 1.5 - 2.5$

Uncertainty in Biomass:

Using error propagation:

$$\frac{\sigma_{AGB}}{AGB} = \beta \times \frac{\sigma_{\acute{h}}}{\acute{h}}$$

Example 6.6: Forest structure analysis

LiDAR data for 1-hectare plot:

Point cloud statistics: - Total points: 2,500,000 - Ground points (classified): 500,000 - Vegetation points: 2,000,000 - Point density: 25 points/m²

CHM statistics: - Mean height: $\acute{h} = 22.5$ m - Standard deviation: $\sigma_h = 8.3$ m - Maximum height: $h_{max} = 42.1$ m - Canopy cover (h > 2m): 85%

Vertical Complexity:

$$VCI = \frac{8.3}{22.5} = 0.37$$

Biomass estimate (temperate forest):

$$AGB = 0.85 \times 22.5^{2.1} = 0.85 \times 624 = 530 \text{ Mg/ha}$$

Example 6.7: Habitat suitability for cavity-nesting birds

Requirements for pileated woodpecker: - Large trees: $h > 25$ m - Dense canopy: CC > 70% - Structural complexity: $VCI > 0.3$

Analysis of 100 forest plots: - Plots meeting all criteria: 23 - Suitable habitat area: 23 ha out of 100 ha = 23%

Correlation with woodpecker presence: - Presence in suitable plots: 18/23 = 78% - Presence in unsuitable plots: 8/77 = 10%

Example 6.8: Multi-temporal LiDAR for forest growth

2015 LiDAR: - Mean height: $\acute{h}_{2015}=18.2$ m - Canopy cover: 72%

2020 LiDAR: - Mean height: $\acute{h}_{2020}=20.8$ m - Canopy cover: 78%

Growth rate:

$$\frac{\Delta h}{\Delta t}=\frac{20.8-18.2}{5}=0.52 \text{ m/year}$$

Biomass change:

$$\Delta AGB=0.85\times\left(20.8^{2.1}-18.2^{2.1}\right)=0.85\times 155=132 \text{ Mg/ha}$$

Carbon sequestration:

$$\Delta C=132\times 0.47=62 \text{ Mg C/ha over 5 years}$$

Example 6.9: Understory vegetation from full-waveform LiDAR

Waveform decomposition: - Canopy return (0-5m): 15% of energy - Mid-story return (5-15m): 35% of energy - Canopy return (15-30m): 50% of energy

Foliage Height Diversity (FHD):

$$FHD=-\sum_{i=1}^{n} p_i \ln\left(p_i\right)$$

where p_i = proportion of returns in height bin i.

$$FHD=-\left(0.15\ln 0.15+0.35\ln 0.35+0.50\ln 0.50\right)=1.03$$

Higher FHD indicates greater structural diversity.

Example 6.10: Error analysis for biomass estimation

Given: - $\acute{h}=20$ m, $\sigma_h=0.5$ m — $AGB=0.85\times 20^{2.1}=385$ Mg/ha — $\beta=2.1$

Relative error:

$$\frac{\sigma_{AGB}}{AGB} = 2.1 \times \frac{0.5}{20} = 0.0525 = 5.25\%$$

Absolute error:

$$\sigma_{AGB} = 385 \times 0.0525 = 20.2 \text{ Mg/ha}$$

95% CI:

$$AGB = 385 \pm 1.96 \times 20.2 = 385 \pm 40 = [345,425] \text{ Mg/ha}$$

Problem 6.6: LiDAR data processing

Given a raw LiDAR point cloud (1 million points) for a 2-hectare forest: a) Describe the steps to classify ground vs. vegetation points b) Create a 1m resolution CHM c) Calculate mean canopy height, canopy cover, and vertical complexity d) Estimate biomass using $AGB = 1.2 \times \acute{h}^{1.8}$ e) Calculate the 95% confidence interval assuming $\sigma_{\acute{h}} = 0.3$ m

Problem 6.7: Estimating forest biomass

Develop an allometric equation to estimate forest biomass from CHM-derived metrics. You have field data for 50 plots with measured biomass and LiDAR-derived height. Describe: a) The regression model you would use b) How to assess model performance (R^2, RMSE) c) Limitations of the approach d) How to improve the model with additional LiDAR metrics

Problem 6.8: Canopy cover definition

Different definitions of canopy cover exist: - Cover > 2m height - Cover > 5m height
- Cover with CHM > 50th percentile

Compare these definitions for a mixed forest. How would the choice affect habitat classification?

Problem 6.9: DTM interpolation errors

In areas with dense vegetation, few laser pulses reach the ground, leading to sparse ground points. Explain: a) How this affects DTM accuracy b) Methods to interpolate DTM in data-poor areas c) How DTM errors propagate to CHM and biomass estimates

Problem 6.10: Fusion of LiDAR and multispectral data

Design a method to combine LiDAR-derived structure (CHM, canopy cover) with multispectral-derived composition (NDVI, species classification) for comprehensive habitat mapping. What are the advantages of this fusion approach?

6.3 Spatial Autocorrelation and Pattern Analysis

Spatial autocorrelation is the degree to which a set of spatial features and their associated data values are clustered together in space (positive spatial autocorrelation) or dispersed (negative spatial autocorrelation). Understanding spatial patterns is essential for identifying biodiversity hotspots, designing conservation areas, and modeling ecological processes.

Theorem 6.3: Moran's I and Spatial Autocorrelation

Statement: Moran's I statistic for spatial autocorrelation is defined as:

$$I = \frac{n}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} w_{ij}} \times \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} \sum_{j=1}^{n} w_{ij} \left(x_i - \acute{x} \right) \left(x_j - \acute{x} \right)}{\sum_{i=1}^{n} \text{¿¿¿}}$$

where: - n = number of spatial units — x_i = value of variable at location i — $\acute{x}$ = mean of variable — w_{ij} = spatial weight between locations i and j

Properties:

- **Range:** $-1 \leq I \leq 1$ (approximately, exact bounds depend on spatial weights)
- **Positive autocorrelation:** $I > 0$ (similar values cluster)
- **Negative autocorrelation:** $I < 0$ (dissimilar values cluster)
- **No autocorrelation:** $I \approx 0$ (random spatial pattern)

Expected Value under Null Hypothesis (random pattern):

$$E[I] = \frac{-1}{n-1}$$

Variance under Null Hypothesis:

$$Var(I) = \frac{n^2 S_1 - n S_2 + 3 S_0^2}{S_0^2(n^2-1)} - E\text{¿}$$

where: - $S_0 = \sum_i \sum_j w_{ij}$ _ $S_1 = \frac{1}{2} \sum_i \sum_j \text{¿¿¿}$ _ $S_2 = \sum_i \left(\sum_j w_{ij} + \sum_j w_{ji} \right)^2$

Standardized Test Statistic:

$$Z_I = \frac{I - E[I]}{\sqrt{Var(I)}}$$

Under the null hypothesis, $Z_I \sim N(0,1)$ asymptotically.

Proof of Moran's I as Correlation Coefficient:

Moran's I can be written as a spatial correlation:

$$I = \frac{\sum_i \sum_j w_{ij}(x_i - \acute{x})(x_j - \acute{x})}{\sum_i \sum_j w_{ij}} \times \frac{n}{\sum_i \text{¿¿¿}}$$

The first term is the weighted spatial covariance, and the second term normalizes by the variance. This is analogous to Pearson's correlation coefficient, but for spatial neighbors.

■

Common Spatial Weight Matrices:

- **Contiguity (Rook):** $w_{ij} = 1$ if i and j share an edge, 0 otherwise
- **Contiguity (Queen):** $w_{ij} = 1$ if i and j share an edge or vertex, 0 otherwise
- **Distance-based:** $w_{ij} = 1$ if $d_{ij} < d_{threshold}$, 0 otherwise

- **Inverse distance:** $w_{ij} = \frac{1}{d_{ij}^{\alpha}}$ where $\alpha \geq 1$
- **K-nearest neighbors:** $w_{ij} = 1$ if j is among k nearest neighbors of i

Row-standardization:

$$w_{ij}^{¿} = \frac{w_{ij}}{\sum_j w_{ij}}$$

ensures $\sum_j w_{ij}^{¿} = 1$ for all i.

Example 6.11: Spatial clustering of species richness

Data: 100 grid cells (10×10), species richness per cell.

Spatial weights: Queen contiguity (row-standardized)

Calculation: - $n = 100$ — $\acute{x} = 25.3$ species — $\sum_i \sum_j w_{ij} = 100$ (row-standardized) — $\sum_i \sum_j w_{ij} (x_i - \acute{x})(x_j - \acute{x}) = 1{,}245$ — $\sum_i ¿¿$

$$I = \frac{100}{100} \times \frac{1{,}245}{3{,}890} = 0.32$$

Expected value: $E[I] = \frac{-1}{99} = -0.0101$

Test: $Z_I = 4.85$ (p < 0.001)

Interpretation: Significant positive spatial autocorrelation; species richness is clustered.

Example 6.12: Disease outbreak spatial pattern

Wildlife disease incidence in 50 counties:

Moran's I = 0.68 (p < 0.001)

Interpretation: Strong positive autocorrelation indicates disease is spatially clustered, suggesting: - Localized transmission - Environmental risk factors with spatial structure - Need for targeted control in hotspot regions

Moran scatterplot: - Quadrant HH (High-High): Counties with high incidence surrounded by high incidence - Quadrant LL (Low-Low): Counties with low incidence surrounded by low incidence - Quadrant HL (High-Low): Spatial outliers - Quadrant LH (Low-High): Spatial outliers

Example 6.13: Negative spatial autocorrelation

Territorial bird species density:

Moran's I = -0.42 ($p < 0.01$)

Interpretation: Negative autocorrelation indicates territorial spacing; high-density patches are surrounded by low-density patches, consistent with territorial behavior.

Example 6.14: Distance-based weights

Comparing weight matrices for forest fragmentation:

Weight Matrix	Moran's I	Z-score	p-value
Rook contiguity	0.35	3.8	< 0.001
Queen contiguity	0.38	4.2	< 0.001
Distance (< 5km)	0.42	5.1	< 0.001
Inverse distance	0.48	6.3	< 0.001

Conclusion: Inverse distance weights capture more spatial structure, suggesting fragmentation effects extend beyond immediate neighbors.

Example 6.15: Local Moran's I (LISA)

Local Indicators of Spatial Association:

$$I_i = \frac{(x_i - \acute{x})}{\frac{1}{n}\sum_j ¿¿¿}$$

Application: Identify specific hotspots and coldspots of biodiversity.

Results for 100 cells: - 12 significant HH clusters (biodiversity hotspots) - 8 significant LL clusters (biodiversity coldspots) - 3 spatial outliers (HL or LH)

Problem 6.11: Autocorrelation analysis

Given species richness values for a 5×5 grid:

```
15  18  22  20  16
17  21  25  23  19
14  19  24  22  18
12  16  20  18  15
10  14  17  16  13
```

a) Calculate Moran's I using rook contiguity weights (row-standardized)

b) Test for significance (α = 0.05)

c) Create a Moran scatterplot

d) Interpret the spatial pattern

Problem 6.12: Weight matrix selection

Compare the effects of different spatial weight matrices (rook, queen, distance-based with different thresholds) on Moran's I for the data in Problem 6.11. How does the choice of weights affect your conclusions about spatial autocorrelation?

Problem 6.13: Geary's C

Research Geary's C statistic, another measure of spatial autocorrelation:

$$C = (n-1)\sum_i \sum_j w_{ij} ¿¿$$

a) How does it differ from Moran's I?

b) Calculate Geary's C for the data in Problem 6.11

c) Compare the interpretation with Moran's I

Problem 6.14: Spatial regression

When spatial autocorrelation is present in regression residuals, ordinary least squares (OLS) estimates are inefficient. Explain: a) Why spatial autocorrelation violates OLS assumptions b) The difference between spatial lag and spatial error models c) How to test for spatial autocorrelation in residuals

Problem 6.15: Modifiable Areal Unit Problem (MAUP)

The MAUP states that spatial analysis results can depend on the choice of spatial units. Design an experiment to demonstrate MAUP: a) Aggregate the 5×5 grid from Problem 6.11 into 2×2 cells b) Recalculate Moran's I c) Explain how aggregation affects the results d) Discuss implications for biodiversity assessment

6.4 Supplementary Problems

- Compare and contrast the advantages and disadvantages of using satellite imagery versus LiDAR for biodiversity monitoring in different ecosystems (tropical forest, grassland, wetland).

- Explain the concept of a "spectral signature" and how it is used in supervised classification. Design a training dataset for classifying 5 habitat types using Landsat 8 imagery.

- Discuss the potential applications of hyperspectral remote sensing (100+ spectral bands) for biodiversity monitoring. What additional information can hyperspectral data provide compared to multispectral data?

- Derive the relationship between NDVI and the fraction of absorbed photosynthetically active radiation (fPAR) using the Beer-Lambert law for canopy reflectance.

- Explain how you would use the Getis-Ord Gi* statistic to identify hotspots and coldspots of biodiversity. How does it differ from Moran's I?

- Design a change detection algorithm using multi-temporal NDVI to distinguish between:

  - Seasonal variation
  - Gradual degradation

- Abrupt disturbance
- Recovery after disturbance

- Prove that the variance of the CHM is the sum of variances of DSM and DTM when errors are independent. What happens if errors are correlated?

- Explain how to validate remote sensing-derived habitat maps using field data. What metrics would you use to assess accuracy (overall accuracy, kappa, producer's/user's accuracy)?

- Discuss the trade-offs between spatial resolution, temporal resolution, and spectral resolution in satellite remote sensing. How would you choose a sensor for monitoring:
  - Deforestation in the Amazon
  - Phenology in temperate forests
  - Coral reef health

- Design a multi-sensor fusion approach combining optical (Sentinel-2), radar (Sentinel-1), and LiDAR data for comprehensive forest monitoring. What unique information does each sensor provide?

6.5 References

[1] Lillesand, T., Kiefer, R. W., & Chipman, J. (2015). *Remote sensing and image interpretation* (7th ed.). John Wiley & Sons.

[2] Jensen, J. R. (2015). *Introductory digital image processing: A remote sensing perspective* (4th ed.). Pearson.

[3] Huete, A., Didan, K., Miura, T., Rodriguez, E. P., Gao, X., & Ferreira, L. G. (2002). Overview of the radiometric and biophysical performance of the MODIS vegetation indices. *Remote Sensing of Environment*, 83(1-2), 195-213.

[4] Lefsky, M. A., Cohen, W. B., Parker, G. G., & Harding, D. J. (2002). Lidar remote sensing for ecosystem studies. *BioScience*, 52(1), 19-30.

[5] Getis, A., & Ord, J. K. (1992). The analysis of spatial association by use of distance statistics. *Geographical Analysis*, 24(3), 189-206.

[6] Anselin, L. (1995). Local indicators of spatial association——LISA. *Geographical Analysis*, 27(2), 93-115.

[7] Asner, G. P., Knapp, D. E., Kennedy-Bowdoin, T., Jones, M. O., Martin, R. E., Boardman, J., & Hughes, R. F. (2008). Carnegie Airborne Observatory: In-flight fusion of hyperspectral imaging and waveform light detection and ranging for three-dimensional studies of ecosystems. *Journal of Applied Remote Sensing*, 2(1), 023542.

[8] Openshaw, S. (1984). *The modifiable areal unit problem*. Concepts and Techniques in Modern Geography, 38.

[9] Tucker, C. J. (1979). Red and photographic infrared linear combinations for monitoring vegetation. *Remote Sensing of Environment*, 8(2), 127-150.

[10] Moran, P. A. P. (1950). Notes on continuous stochastic phenomena. *Biometrika*, 37(1/2), 17-23.

Chapter 7: Environmental DNA (eDNA) and Molecular Methods

Environmental DNA (eDNA) is a revolutionary tool for biodiversity monitoring. It involves detecting traces of DNA that organisms leave behind in their environment, such as in water, soil, or air. This chapter explores the principles of eDNA analysis and other molecular methods that are transforming our ability to detect and identify species.

7.1 eDNA Sampling and Analysis

eDNA analysis involves collecting an environmental sample, extracting the DNA, and then using molecular techniques to identify the species present.

Theorem 7.1: Detection Probability from eDNA

The probability of detecting a species using eDNA is a function of several factors, including the density of the species, the rate at which it sheds DNA, the degradation rate of the DNA in the environment, and the efficiency of the sampling and analysis methods. This can be modeled as:

$$P(detect) = 1 - (1 - p_s)^n$$

where p_s is the probability of detecting the species in a single water sample, and n is the number of samples collected.

Example 7.1: Aquatic biodiversity assessment

eDNA is particularly useful for assessing the biodiversity of aquatic ecosystems. By collecting a water sample from a lake or river, researchers can identify the fish, amphibians, and other organisms that are present without having to see or catch them. This is a non-invasive and often more sensitive method than traditional survey techniques.

Example 7.2: Detecting rare and elusive species

eDNA has been successfully used to detect the presence of rare and elusive species, such as the hellbender salamander in the eastern United States and the great crested newt in the UK. This is a powerful tool for monitoring the populations of threatened and endangered species.

Problem 7.1: eDNA interpretation

You have collected eDNA samples from a river and the results show the presence of DNA from a species of fish that is not known to occur in that river. What are the possible explanations for this result? How would you investigate this further?

Problem 7.2: Designing an eDNA study

Design an eDNA study to assess the effectiveness of a dam removal project on the recovery of a migratory fish species. What are your key research questions? Where and when would you collect your samples? What control sites would you include in your study design?

7.2 Metabarcoding

Metabarcoding is a technique that allows for the simultaneous identification of multiple species from a single environmental sample. It involves amplifying a short, standardized region of DNA (a "barcode") and then sequencing all the amplified DNA. The resulting sequences are then compared to a reference library to identify the species present.

Theorem 7.2: Species Identification from Sequence Data

The accuracy of species identification in metabarcoding depends on the quality of the reference library. A complete and well-curated reference library is essential for accurate taxonomic assignment. The probability of correctly identifying a species is a function of the genetic distance between that species and its closest relative in the reference library.

Example 7.3: Soil biodiversity

Metabarcoding can be used to assess the biodiversity of soil organisms, such as bacteria, fungi, and invertebrates. By analyzing the eDNA from a soil sample, researchers can get a comprehensive picture of the soil food web and assess the health of the soil ecosystem.

Example 7.4: Diet analysis

Metabarcoding can be used to analyze the diet of animals by sequencing the DNA from their feces. This can provide valuable information about the feeding ecology of a species and its interactions with other species in the community.

Problem 7.3: Metabarcoding analysis

You have received a dataset of DNA sequences from a metabarcoding study of insects in a tropical rainforest. Describe the bioinformatics pipeline that you would use to process the data and to identify the species present. What are the key steps in the pipeline? What are the potential sources of error?

Problem 7.4: Limitations of metabarcoding

Discuss the limitations of metabarcoding for biodiversity assessment. For example, can it be used to estimate the abundance of species? What are the challenges of creating a complete reference library for all species?

7.3 Supplementary Problems

1. Compare and contrast the use of eDNA and traditional survey methods for biodiversity monitoring.
2. Explain the concept of "quantitative PCR" (qPCR) and how it can be used to estimate the abundance of a species from eDNA.
3. Discuss the potential of eDNA for early detection of invasive species.
4. What are the key considerations for preventing contamination in eDNA studies?
5. How can citizen science be integrated with eDNA research to enhance biodiversity monitoring at large scales?

7.4 References

[1] Taberlet, P., Coissac, E., Hajibabaei, M., & Rieseberg, L. H. (2012). Environmental DNA. *Molecular Ecology*, 21(8), 1789-1793.

[2] Deiner, K., Bik, H. M., Mächler, E., Seymour, M., Lacoursière-Roussel, A., Altermatt, F., … & Pawlowski, J. (2017). Environmental DNA metabarcoding: transforming how we survey animal and plant communities. *Molecular Ecology*, 26(21), 5872-5895.

[3] Thomsen, P. F., & Willerslev, E. (2015). Environmental DNA—an emerging tool in conservation for monitoring past and present biodiversity. *Biological Conservation*, 183, 4-18.

[4] Goldberg, C. S., Pilliod, D. S., Arkle, R. S., & Waits, L. P. (2011). Molecular detection of vertebrates in stream water: a demonstration using Rocky Mountain tailed frogs and Idaho giant salamanders. *PloS one*, 6(7), e22763.

[5] Biggs, J., Ewald, N., Valentini, A., Gaboriaud, C., Dejean, T., Griffiths, R. A., … & Williams, P. (2015). Using eDNA to develop a national citizen science-based monitoring programme for the great crested newt (Triturus cristatus). *Biological Conservation*, 183, 19-28.

Chapter 8: Citizen Science and Data Integration

Citizen science, the involvement of the public in scientific research, is a rapidly growing field that has the potential to revolutionize biodiversity monitoring. By harnessing the power of the crowd, citizen science can generate vast amounts of data on the distribution and abundance of species over large spatial and temporal scales. This chapter explores the role of citizen science in biodiversity accounting and the methods for integrating data from multiple sources.

8.1 Citizen Science Platforms

A wide range of citizen science platforms have been developed to facilitate the collection and management of biodiversity data. These platforms range from simple mobile apps for recording species sightings to more sophisticated online platforms for analyzing data and collaborating with researchers.

Theorem 8.1: Data Quality and Bias Correction

Citizen science data can be prone to errors and biases. For example, participants may misidentify species, or they may be more likely to record data in easily accessible areas. Statistical methods can be used to account for these biases and to improve the quality of the data. For example, occupancy models can be used to estimate the probability of detecting a species, given that it is present, and to correct for differences in observer effort and skill.

Example 8.1: eBird data analysis

eBird is one of the largest citizen science projects in the world. It allows birdwatchers to submit their observations of birds through a mobile app or website. The data is then used by researchers to study the distribution, abundance, and migration of birds. eBird has a rigorous data validation process that includes automated filters and expert review to ensure the quality of the data.

Example 8.2: iNaturalist for species identification

iNaturalist is another popular citizen science platform that allows users to upload photos of plants and animals. The platform's community of users, which includes both amateur naturalists and expert scientists, helps to identify the species in the photos. This has created a massive and valuable dataset on the distribution of species around the world.

Problem 8.1: Bias assessment

You are using citizen science data to study the distribution of a rare plant species. You are concerned that the data may be biased because participants are more likely to search for the plant in areas where it has been seen before. How would you assess this bias? What methods could you use to correct for it?

Problem 8.2: Designing a citizen science project

Design a citizen science project to monitor the population of a common urban animal, such as squirrels or pigeons. What are your key research questions? What data would you ask participants to collect? How would you ensure the quality of the data?

8.2 Data Integration and Harmonization

Biodiversity data comes from a wide range of sources, including field surveys, remote sensing, eDNA, and citizen science. Integrating these different types of data is a major challenge, but it is essential for getting a complete picture of biodiversity.

Theorem 8.2: Multi-Source Data Fusion

Data fusion is the process of combining data from multiple sources to produce a more accurate and complete dataset. Bayesian statistical models are often used for data fusion because they can account for the uncertainty and biases in each data source. For example, a Bayesian model could be used to combine data from citizen science observations and remote sensing to create a more accurate map of a species' distribution.

Example 8.3: Integrated biodiversity database

The Global Biodiversity Information Facility (GBIF) is an international network and data infrastructure that provides open access to biodiversity data from around the world. GBIF integrates data from a wide range of sources, including museums, herbaria, and citizen science projects. This has created a massive and valuable resource for biodiversity research and conservation.

Example 8.4: Combining eDNA and traditional surveys

Researchers could combine eDNA data with traditional electrofishing surveys to get a more complete picture of the fish community in a river. The eDNA data could be used to detect rare and elusive species that are often missed by electrofishing, while the electrofishing data could be used to estimate the abundance and size structure of the more common species.

Problem 8.3: Data harmonization

You have been given two datasets on the distribution of a plant species. One dataset is from a historical museum collection, and the other is from a modern citizen science project. The two datasets have different spatial and temporal resolutions, and they may use different taxonomic names for the same species. Describe the steps you would take to harmonize these two datasets so that they can be integrated and analyzed together.

Problem 8.4: Data integration challenges

Discuss the key challenges of integrating data from different sources for biodiversity assessment. These challenges may include issues of data quality, data standards, data ownership, and data privacy.

8.3 Supplementary Problems

1. Discuss the ethical considerations of using citizen science data, particularly with regard to data ownership and the privacy of participants.
2. How can machine learning be used to improve the accuracy of species identification in citizen science projects?

3. Explain the concept of “data dredging” and why it is a potential pitfall of working with large, integrated biodiversity datasets.
4. Design a workflow for a data integration project that combines satellite remote sensing data with on-the-ground species occurrence data to map habitat suitability for a threatened species.
5. What is the role of data standards, such as Darwin Core, in facilitating the integration of biodiversity data?

8.4 References

[1] Sullivan, B. L., Wood, C. L., Iliff, M. J., Bonney, R. E., Fink, D., & Kelling, S. (2009). eBird: a citizen-based bird observation network in the biological sciences. *Biological conservation*, 142(10), 2282-2292.

[2] Isaac, N. J., van Strien, A. J., August, T. A., de Zeeuw, M. P., & Roy, D. B. (2014). Statistics for citizen science: a dynamic, multi-scale approach to analysing structured and unstructured data. *PloS one*, 9(4), e94132.

[3] GBIF: The Global Biodiversity Information Facility. https://www.gbif.org/

[4] Wieczorek, J., Bloom, D., Guralnick, R., Blum, S., Döring, M., Giovanni, R., … & Vieglais, D. (2012). Darwin Core: an evolving community-developed biodiversity data standard. *PloS one*, 7(1), e29715.

[5] Fletcher Jr, R. J., & Fortin, M. J. (2018). *Spatial analysis: a guide for ecologists*. Cambridge University Press.

PART III: ACCOUNTING FRAMEWORKS AND ALLOCATION METHODS

Chapter 9: Physical Accounting for Biodiversity

Physical accounting for biodiversity involves measuring and tracking the state of ecosystems and species in physical units, such as hectares of forest, tonnes of biomass, or number of individuals. This chapter introduces the key physical accounts for biodiversity, including ecosystem extent, ecosystem condition, and species accounts, following the System of Environmental-Economic Accounting——Ecosystem Accounting (SEEA EA) framework.

9.1 Ecosystem Extent Accounts

Ecosystem extent accounts track the area of different ecosystem types over time. They provide a fundamental baseline for assessing changes in the natural capital of a country or region.

Theorem 9.1: Land Cover Transition Matrix

Statement: Ecosystem extent changes can be represented by a land cover transition matrix **T**, where element t_{ij} represents the area transitioning from ecosystem type i at time t_1 to ecosystem type j at time t_2:

$$T=\begin{bmatrix} t_{11} & t_{12} & \cdots & t_{1n} \\ t_{21} & t_{22} & \cdots & t_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ t_{n1} & t_{n2} & \cdots & t_{nn} \end{bmatrix}$$

where n is the number of ecosystem types.

Conservation Property:

The total area is conserved:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i(t_1)=\sum_{j=1}^{n} A_j(t_2)=A_{total}$$

where $A_i(t)$ is the area of ecosystem type i at time t.

Relationship between initial and final areas:

$$A_j(t_2)=\sum_{i=1}^{n} t_{ij}$$

$$A_i(t_1)=\sum_{j=1}^{n} t_{ij}$$

Proof of Conservation:

$$\sum_{j=1}^{n} A_j(t_2)=\sum_{j=1}^{n}\sum_{i=1}^{n} t_{ij}=\sum_{i=1}^{n}\sum_{j=1}^{n} t_{ij}=\sum_{i=1}^{n} A_i(t_1)$$

■

Net Change in Ecosystem Type j:

$$\Delta A_j=A_j(t_2)-A_j(t_1)=\sum_{i=1}^{n} t_{ij}-\sum_{k=1}^{n} t_{jk}$$

This equals: - **Gains:** $\sum_{i\neq j} t_{ij}$ (conversions TO type j) - **Losses:** $\sum_{k\neq j} t_{jk}$ (conversions FROM type j) - **Persistence:** t_{jj} (no change)

Fragmentation Metrics:

- **Number of Patches:**

$$N_p=\text{count of connected components of ecosystem type } j$$

- **Mean Patch Size:**

$$\acute{A}_p=\frac{A_j}{N_p}$$

- **Edge Density:**

$$ED=\frac{E}{A_j}$$

where E is the total edge length of ecosystem type j.

4. **Landscape Shape Index:**

$$LSI = \frac{E}{2\sqrt{\pi A_j}}$$

Values: $LSI = 1$ for circular patch, $LSI > 1$ for irregular shapes.

Example 9.1: Land cover change accounting

Region: 10,000 ha, 3 ecosystem types (Forest, Grassland, Agriculture)

Year 2000 areas: - Forest: 5,000 ha - Grassland: 3,000 ha - Agriculture: 2,000 ha

Year 2020 transition matrix (ha):

	Forest	Grassland	Agriculture	Total (2000)
Forest	4,200	300	500	5,000
Grassland	100	2,000	900	3,000
Agriculture	50	150	1,800	2,000
Total (2020)	**4,350**	**2,450**	**3,200**	**10,000**

Net changes: - Forest: $\Delta A_F = 4{,}350 - 5{,}000 = -650$ ha (13% loss) - Grassland: $\Delta A_G = 2{,}450 - 3{,}000 = -550$ ha (18% loss) - Agriculture: $\Delta A_A = 3{,}200 - 2{,}000 = +1{,}200$ ha (60% gain)

Main conversions: - Forest → Agriculture: 500 ha - Grassland → Agriculture: 900 ha

Example 9.2: Forest fragmentation analysis

2000: - Forest area: 5,000 ha - Number of patches: 5 - Mean patch size: 1,000 ha - Total edge: 50 km - Edge density: 10 m/ha - LSI: 1.41

2020: - Forest area: 4,350 ha - Number of patches: 12 - Mean patch size: 363 ha - Total edge: 72 km - Edge density: 16.6 m/ha - LSI: 1.94

Interpretation: Despite only 13% area loss, fragmentation increased dramatically (140% more patches, 66% higher edge density, 38% higher shape complexity).

Example 9.3: Transition probability matrix

Normalized transition probabilities:

$$p_{ij} = \frac{t_{ij}}{A_i(t_1)}$$

	Forest	Grassland	Agriculture
Forest	0.84	0.06	0.10
Grassland	0.03	0.67	0.30
Agriculture	0.025	0.075	0.90

Interpretation: Agriculture is most stable (90% persistence), while grassland is most vulnerable to conversion (33% converted).

Example 9.4: Projected future extent

Assuming constant transition probabilities:

$$A(t+\Delta t) = P^T A(t)$$

2040 projection: - Forest: $4{,}350 \times 0.84 + 2{,}450 \times 0.03 + 3{,}200 \times 0.025 = 3{,}808$ ha - Grassland: $4{,}350 \times 0.06 + 2{,}450 \times 0.67 + 3{,}200 \times 0.075 = 2{,}142$ ha - Agriculture: $4{,}350 \times 0.10 + 2{,}450 \times 0.30 + 3{,}200 \times 0.90 = 4{,}050$ ha

Trend: Continued conversion to agriculture.

Example 9.5: Uncertainty in extent accounts

Sources of uncertainty: 1. **Classification error:** 5% misclassification rate 2. **Minimum mapping unit:** 1 ha (small patches missed) 3. **Temporal mismatch:** Images from different seasons

Error propagation in net change:

$$\sigma_{\Delta A} = \sqrt{\sigma^2_{A(t_2)} + \sigma^2_{A(t_1)}}$$

For Forest with 5% error: - $\sigma_{A(2020)} = 0.05 \times 4{,}350 = 218$ ha — $\sigma_{A(2000)} = 0.05 \times 5{,}000 = 250$ ha — $\sigma_{\Delta A} = \sqrt{218^2 + 250^2} = 332$ ha

95% CI for forest loss:

$$\Delta A_F = -650 \pm 1.96 \times 332 = -650 \pm 651 = [-1{,}301, +1] \text{ ha}$$

The change is marginally significant.

Problem 9.1: Extent account construction

Given land cover maps for 2010 and 2020 with 4 types (Forest, Wetland, Grassland, Urban):

2010 areas: Forest=6,000 ha, Wetland=1,500 ha, Grassland=2,000 ha, Urban=500 ha

2020 areas: Forest=5,200 ha, Wetland=1,200 ha, Grassland=1,800 ha, Urban=1,800 ha

Known transitions: - Forest□Urban: 600 ha - Grassland□Urban: 500 ha - Wetland□Grassland: 200 ha - Forest□Grassland: 100 ha

e) Construct the complete transition matrix (fill in remaining cells assuming minimal other changes)
f) Calculate net change for each type
g) Identify the main drivers of change
h) Calculate the persistence rate for each ecosystem type

Problem 9.2: Interpreting extent accounts

An ecosystem extent account for a coastal region shows: - Mangrove: -500 ha (from 2,000 to 1,500 ha) - Aquaculture: +450 ha (from 100 to 550 ha) - Agriculture: +50 ha

i) What are the likely ecological consequences (biodiversity, carbon, coastal protection)?
j) What are the economic trade-offs?
k) How would you value the ecosystem services lost vs. gained?
l) Propose policy interventions to balance conservation and development

Problem 9.3: Fragmentation metrics

For the forest data in Example 9.2:

m) Calculate the change in mean patch size and explain its ecological significance

n) Research the "edge effect" and explain why edge density matters for biodiversity

o) Calculate the effective mesh size: $m_{eff} = \frac{A_{total}^2}{\sum_{i=1}^{N_p} A_i^2}$

p) Propose a fragmentation index that combines area loss and configuration change

Problem 9.4: Markov chain analysis

The transition probability matrix can be analyzed as a Markov chain:

q) Calculate the steady-state distribution (eigenvalue problem)

r) Interpret what the steady state means for long-term land cover

s) Calculate the half-life for forest conversion: $t_{\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{-\ln 2}{\ln p_{FF}}$

t) Discuss limitations of assuming constant transition probabilities

Problem 9.5: Spatial pattern analysis

Beyond area and fragmentation, spatial configuration matters:

u) Research the concept of "landscape connectivity" and explain its importance

v) Explain how to calculate the "proximity index" for habitat patches

w) Design a metric to quantify the isolation of protected areas

x) Discuss how climate change affects the interpretation of extent accounts (shifting biomes)

9.2 Ecosystem Condition Accounts

Ecosystem condition accounts track the quality of ecosystems over time. They are based on a set of indicators that reflect the ecological integrity and functioning of the ecosystem.

Theorem 9.2: Ecosystem Condition Index Aggregation

Statement: An ecosystem condition index C aggregates multiple indicators $I_1, I_2, \ldots, I_m$ using weighted scoring:

$$C = \sum_{k=1}^{m} w_k \cdot s_k(I_k)$$

where: - w_k = weight for indicator k (with $\sum_{k=1}^{m} w_k = 1$) — $s_k(I_k)$ = score function mapping indicator k to [0,1] scale — $C \in [0,1]$ where 1 = reference condition, 0 = completely degraded

Score Function (Normalization):

For indicators where higher values indicate better condition:

$$s_k(I_k) = \frac{I_k - I_k^{min}}{I_k^{ref} - I_k^{min}}$$

For indicators where lower values indicate better condition:

$$s_k(I_k) = \frac{I_k^{max} - I_k}{I_k^{max} - I_k^{ref}}$$

where: - I_k^{ref} = reference (desired) value — I_k^{min} = minimum (worst) value — I_k^{max} = maximum value

Properties:

- **Boundedness:** $0 \leq C \leq 1$
- **Monotonicity:** If all indicators improve, C increases
- **Reference condition:** $C = 1$ when all $I_k = I_k^{ref}$
- **Degraded condition:** $C = 0$ when all $I_k = I_k^{min}$ or I_k^{max}

Proof of Boundedness:

Since $0 \leq s_k(I_k) \leq 1$ for all k, and $w_k \geq 0$ with $\sum w_k = 1$:

$$C = \sum_{k=1}^{m} w_k \cdot s_k(I_k) \leq \sum_{k=1}^{m} w_k \cdot 1 = 1$$

$$C = \sum_{k=1}^{m} w_k \cdot s_k(I_k) \geq \sum_{k=1}^{m} w_k \cdot 0 = 0$$

■

Alternative Aggregation Methods:

- **Geometric mean (non-compensatory):**

$$C = \prod_{k=1}^{m} s_k ¿$$

This penalizes poor performance on any single indicator.

b) **Minimum (limiting factor):**

$$C = \min_k s_k(I_k)$$

Reflects Liebig's law of the minimum.

- **Fuzzy logic:**

$$C = \frac{\sum_{k=1}^{m} w_k \cdot \mu_k(I_k)}{\sum_{k=1}^{m} w_k}$$

where μ_k is a fuzzy membership function.

Weighting Methods:

- **Equal weights:** $w_k = \frac{1}{m}$
- **Expert judgment:** Delphi method, AHP
- **Statistical:** Principal Component Analysis (PCA)
- **Stakeholder preferences:** Multi-criteria decision analysis

Example 9.6: River ecosystem health assessment

Indicators and reference values:

Indicator	Unit	Measured	Reference	Mi	Weight

				n	
Dissolved Oxygen	mg/L	7.5	9.0	2.0	0.25
Total Nitrogen	mg/L	2.5	1.0	5.0	0.20
Macroinvertebrate Diversity (Shannon)	-	2.1	2.8	0.5	0.30
Native Fish Abundance	fish/100m	45	80	10	0.25

Score calculations:

- **DO (higher is better):**

$$s_1 = \frac{7.5 - 2.0}{9.0 - 2.0} = \frac{5.5}{7.0} = 0.786$$

- **TN (lower is better):**

$$s_2 = \frac{5.0 - 2.5}{5.0 - 1.0} = \frac{2.5}{4.0} = 0.625$$

- **Macroinvertebrates (higher is better):**

$$s_3 = \frac{2.1 - 0.5}{2.8 - 0.5} = \frac{1.6}{2.3} = 0.696$$

- **Fish (higher is better):**

$$s_4 = \frac{45 - 10}{80 - 10} = \frac{35}{70} = 0.500$$

Ecosystem Condition Index:

$$C = 0.25(0.786) + 0.20(0.625) + 0.30(0.696) + 0.25(0.500) = 0.659$$

Interpretation: River is in **moderate condition** (66% of reference).

Example 9.7: Forest condition index

Indicators:

Indicator	Measured	Reference	Mi n	Weight

Dead wood volume (m³/ha)	15	30	0	0.20
Tree age diversity (Shannon)	1.8	2.5	0	0.25
Old-growth species presence (%)	40	80	0	0.30
Canopy cover (%)	75	85	20	0.25

Scores: - $s_1 = \frac{15}{30} = 0.500$ — $s_2 = \frac{1.8}{2.5} = 0.720$ — $s_3 = \frac{40}{80} = 0.500$ — $s_4 = \frac{75-20}{85-20} = 0.846$

Condition index:

$$C = 0.20(0.500) + 0.25(0.720) + 0.30(0.500) + 0.25(0.846) = 0.642$$

Comparison with geometric mean:

$$C_{geom} = 0.500^{0.20} \times 0.720^{0.25} \times 0.500^{0.30} \times 0.846^{0.25} = 0.613$$

Geometric mean is lower, reflecting poor performance on dead wood and old-growth species.

Example 9.8: Temporal trends in condition

River condition over 10 years:

Year	DO	TN	Macroinv	Fish	Index C
2010	6.5	3.5	1.5	30	0.478
2015	7.0	3.0	1.8	38	0.568
2020	7.5	2.5	2.1	45	0.659

Trend: Improving condition (+38% over 10 years), likely due to pollution control measures.

Rate of improvement:

$$\frac{dC}{dt}=\frac{0.659-0.478}{10}=0.0181 \text{ per year}$$

Projection to reference condition:

$$t_{ref}=\frac{1.0-0.659}{0.0181}=18.8 \text{ years}$$

Example 9.9: Spatial variation in condition

10 river segments, condition indices:

Segment	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
C	0.75	0.68	0.52	0.45	0.38	0.42	0.55	0.63	0.71	0.79

Mean: $\acute{C}=0.588$ **SD:** $\sigma_C=0.145$ **Range:** [0.38, 0.79]

Classification: - Good (C > 0.7): Segments 1, 9, 10 - Moderate (0.5 < C < 0.7): Segments 2, 3, 7, 8 - Poor (C < 0.5): Segments 4, 5, 6

Management priority: Focus restoration on segments 4-6.

Example 9.10: Sensitivity analysis

Varying weights for river condition:

Weight Scenario	w_{DO}	w_{TN}	$w_{Macroinv}$	w_{Fish}	C
Equal	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.652
Biological focus	0.10	0.10	0.40	0.40	0.631
Water quality focus	0.40	0.40	0.10	0.10	0.678
Original	0.25	0.20	0.30	0.25	0.659

Conclusion: Index is relatively robust to weight changes (range: 0.631-0.678).

Problem 9.6: Condition index calculation

Develop an ecosystem condition index for a grassland with these indicators:

Indicator	Measured	Reference	Min/Max
Native plant species richness	35	50	10
Invasive species cover (%)	15	0	40
Soil organic carbon (%)	3.5	5.0	1.0
Pollinator abundance (per transect)	120	200	20

y) Propose weights for each indicator and justify your choices

z) Calculate normalized scores for each indicator

aa) Calculate the overall condition index

bb) Classify the grassland condition (excellent/good/moderate/poor)

Problem 9.7: Reference conditions

For a highly modified ecosystem (urban park):

cc) Discuss challenges in defining a "reference condition"

dd) Propose three alternative reference approaches:

- Historical (pre-development)
- Best available (similar parks)
- Functional (ecosystem services provision)

ee) Calculate a condition index using each reference approach

ff) Discuss which approach is most appropriate and why

Problem 9.8: Aggregation method comparison

Using the grassland data from Problem 9.6:

a) Calculate the condition index using arithmetic mean (linear)

b) Calculate using geometric mean (non-compensatory)

c) Calculate using minimum (limiting factor)

d) Compare the three methods and discuss when each is most appropriate

Problem 9.9: Uncertainty in condition assessment

Sources of uncertainty in condition indices:

a) Measurement error in indicators (typically 5-15%)

b) Uncertainty in reference values

c) Subjectivity in weights

Design a Monte Carlo simulation to quantify overall uncertainty in the condition index. Report the 95% confidence interval.

Problem 9.10: Multi-scale condition assessment

Ecosystem condition can be assessed at multiple scales (plot, landscape, region):

a) Explain how condition indices should be aggregated across scales

b) Discuss whether area-weighted averaging is appropriate

c) Propose a method to account for spatial autocorrelation

d) Design a hierarchical condition assessment framework

9.3 Species Accounts

Species accounts track the status of individual species over time. They are particularly important for threatened and endangered species, but can also be used to monitor the populations of more common species.

Theorem 9.3: Population Dynamics Accounting

Statement: The change in population size follows the fundamental accounting equation:

$$N(t+1) = N(t) + B - D + I - E$$

where: - $N(t)$ = population size at time t - B = births (recruitment) - D = deaths (mortality) - I = immigration - E = emigration

Per Capita Rates:

Dividing by $N(t)$:

$$\frac{N(t+1)}{N(t)}=1+b-d+i-e$$

where b, d, i, e are per capita rates.

Population Growth Rate:

$$\lambda=\frac{N(t+1)}{N(t)}=1+r$$

where $r=b-d+i-e$ is the per capita growth rate.

Stability Conditions:

- $\lambda>1$ (or $r>0$): Population increasing
- $\lambda=1$ (or $r=0$): Population stable
- $\lambda<1$ (or $r<0$): Population declining

Proof of Exponential Growth:

For constant λ:

$$N(t)=N(0)\cdot\lambda^t$$

Taking logarithms:

$$\ln N(t)=\ln N(0)+t\ln\lambda$$

This is linear in t, confirming exponential growth/decline.

■

Matrix Population Model (Age/Stage-Structured):

$$n(t+1)=L\cdot n(t)$$

where: - $n(t)=¿$ is the population vector (k age/stage classes) - L is the Leslie matrix (or Lefkovitch matrix for stages)

Leslie Matrix:

$$L=\begin{bmatrix} F_1 & F_2 & \cdots & F_k \\ P_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ 0 & P_2 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \cdots & P_{k-1} \end{bmatrix}$$

where: - F_i = fecundity of age class i — P_i = survival probability from age i to $i+1$

Asymptotic Growth Rate:

The dominant eigenvalue λ_1 of L determines long-term growth:

$$\lambda_1=\max|\lambda_i|$$

Stable Age Distribution:

The eigenvector corresponding to λ_1 gives the stable age distribution.

Sensitivity Analysis:

$$S_{ij}=\frac{\partial \lambda_1}{\partial l_{ij}}$$

measures how λ_1 changes with small changes in matrix element l_{ij}.

Elasticity:

$$E_{ij}=\frac{l_{ij}}{\lambda_1}\frac{\partial \lambda_1}{\partial l_{ij}}$$

is the proportional sensitivity (sums to 1).

Example 9.11: Threatened bird species account

California Condor population (simplified):

2015: - $N(2015)=435$ individuals - Births: $B=25$ - Deaths: $D=18$ - Captive releases (immigration): $I=15$ - Captures (emigration): $E=2$

2016:

$$N(2016) = 435 + 25 - 18 + 15 - 2 = 455$$

Growth rate:

$$\lambda = \frac{455}{435} = 1.046$$

$$r = 0.046 = 4.6\% \text{ per year}$$

Per capita rates: - $b = \frac{25}{435} = 0.057$ _ $d = \frac{18}{435} = 0.041$ _ $i = \frac{15}{435} = 0.034$ _ $e = \frac{2}{435} = 0.005$

Natural growth (without captive breeding):

$$r_{natural} = b - d = 0.057 - 0.041 = 0.016 = 1.6\%$$

Contribution of captive breeding:

$$r_{captive} = i - e = 0.034 - 0.005 = 0.029 = 2.9\%$$

Example 9.12: Age-structured population model

Loggerhead sea turtle (3 age classes):

Leslie matrix:

$$L = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 127 \\ 0.675 & 0.703 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.047 & 0.809 \end{bmatrix}$$

where: - Age 1: Juveniles (0-7 years), survival = 0.675 - Age 2: Subadults (8-21 years), survival = 0.703, maturation = 0.047 - Age 3: Adults (22+ years), survival = 0.809, fecundity = 127

Dominant eigenvalue:

$$\lambda_1 = 0.945$$

Interpretation: Population declining at 5.5% per year.

Stable age distribution:

$$w = ¿$$

81.6% juveniles, 16.9% subadults, 1.5% adults at equilibrium.

Elasticity analysis:

Parameter	Elasticity
Juvenile survival (P_1)	0.419
Subadult survival (P_2)	0.381
Adult survival (P_3)	0.183
Adult fecundity (F_3)	0.017

Management implication: Focus on improving juvenile and subadult survival (e.g., reducing bycatch), not increasing fecundity.

Example 9.13: Minimum viable population

Extinction risk analysis:

For a population with $\lambda = 1.02$ and environmental stochasticity $\sigma_e = 0.15$:

Quasi-extinction threshold: $N_e = 50$ individuals

Probability of quasi-extinction in 100 years:

Using diffusion approximation:

$$P(extinct) \approx \exp\left(\frac{-2\mu N_0}{\sigma_e^2}\right)$$

where $\mu = \ln\lambda = \ln 1.02 = 0.0198$.

For $N_0 = 200$:

$$P(extinct) \approx \exp\left(\frac{-2(0.0198)(200)}{0.15^2}\right) = \exp(-35.2) \approx 0$$

For $N_0 = 100$:

$$P(extinct) \approx \exp\left(\frac{-2(0.0198)(100)}{0.15^2}\right) = \exp(-17.6) \approx 2 \times 10^{-8}$$

Minimum viable population (MVP): $N_0 \approx 100$ for $<1\%$ extinction risk in 100 years.

Example 9.14: Metapopulation dynamics

Network of 5 subpopulations:

Colonization-extinction balance:

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = c \cdot p(1-p) - e \cdot p$$

where: - p = fraction of patches occupied - c = colonization rate - e = extinction rate

Equilibrium:

$$p^{¿} = 1 - \frac{e}{c}$$

Data: $c = 0.25$, $e = 0.10$

$$p^{¿} = 1 - \frac{0.10}{0.25} = 0.60$$

Interpretation: At equilibrium, 60% of patches (3 out of 5) are occupied.

Persistence condition: $c > e$ (colonization exceeds extinction).

Example 9.15: Harvest management

Sustainable harvest model:

$$H = r \cdot N\left(1 - \frac{N}{K}\right)$$

where: - H = sustainable harvest - r = intrinsic growth rate - K = carrying capacity - N = population size

Maximum Sustainable Yield (MSY):

$$H_{MSY} = \frac{r \cdot K}{4}$$

at $N=\frac{K}{2}$.

Example: Deer population with $r=0.30$, $K=1{,}000$

$$H_{MSY}=\frac{0.30\times 1{,}000}{4}=75 \text{ deer/year}$$

Current population: $N=700$

Sustainable harvest:

$$H=0.30\times 700\times\left(1-\frac{700}{1{,}000}\right)=0.30\times 700\times 0.30=63 \text{ deer/year}$$

Problem 9.11: Species account development

For an African elephant population:

Data: - Current population: 2,500 individuals - Annual births: 125 - Annual deaths (natural): 75 - Poaching deaths: 50 - Translocations in: 10 - Translocations out: 5

a) Calculate the population growth rate λ

b) Calculate per capita birth and death rates

c) What would the growth rate be without poaching?

d) Project the population 10 years into the future under current conditions

e) Calculate the time to population halving if poaching continues

Problem 9.12: Matrix population model

For a plant species with 3 stages (seedling, juvenile, adult):

$$L=\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 50 \\ 0.10 & 0.50 & 0 \\ 0 & 0.25 & 0.90 \end{bmatrix}$$

a) Calculate the dominant eigenvalue λ_1 (use software or iterative method)

b) Determine if the population is increasing, stable, or declining

c) Calculate the stable stage distribution

d) Perform elasticity analysis to identify which vital rate has the greatest impact on λ_1

e) Propose management actions based on the elasticity analysis

Problem 9.13: Stochastic population dynamics

Environmental stochasticity causes λ to vary randomly:

$$\lambda_t \sim \text{Lognormal}(\mu, \sigma^2)$$

with $\mu = 1.05$ and $\sigma = 0.20$.

a) Explain why lognormal distribution is appropriate for growth rates

b) Calculate the stochastic growth rate: $\lambda_s = \exp(E[\ln\lambda])$

c) Compare λ_s with the deterministic $\lambda = 1.05$

d) Run a Monte Carlo simulation (1000 iterations, 50 years) to estimate extinction probability

e) Discuss how environmental stochasticity affects population viability

Problem 9.14: Allee effects

At low population sizes, Allee effects can cause $\lambda < 1$ even when $N < K$:

$$\frac{dN}{dt} = rN\left(1 - \frac{N}{K}\right)\left(\frac{N}{A} - 1\right)$$

where A is the Allee threshold.

a) Explain the biological mechanisms causing Allee effects

b) Identify the equilibria and determine their stability

c) For $r = 0.5$, $K = 1000$, $A = 50$, plot $\frac{dN}{dt}$ vs. N

d) Discuss implications for conservation (minimum viable population)

Problem 9.15: Integrated population model

Combine multiple data sources (counts, mark-recapture, productivity):

a) Explain the advantages of integrated models over single-data-source models

b) Design an integrated model for a migratory bird combining:

- Breeding ground counts
- Winter ground counts
- Mark-recapture survival estimates
- Nest monitoring (productivity)

c) Discuss how to account for observation error vs. process error

d) Explain how Bayesian methods can integrate these data sources

9.4 Supplementary Problems

- Discuss the challenges of developing a comprehensive set of physical accounts for biodiversity for a whole country. Consider data availability, standardization, and resource requirements.

- Explain the relationship between ecosystem extent, ecosystem condition, and the provision of ecosystem services. Can a small but high-quality ecosystem provide more services than a large degraded one?

- How can physical accounts for biodiversity be used to inform policy and decision-making? Provide specific examples of policy applications (e.g., land use planning, protected area design, restoration prioritization).

- Discuss the role of remote sensing in the development of physical accounts for biodiversity. What are the advantages and limitations of satellite-based monitoring?

- What is the relationship between the species accounts described in this chapter and the Red List of Threatened Species maintained by the IUCN? How do population models inform Red List assessments?

- Design a comprehensive physical accounting system for a national park that integrates extent, condition, and species accounts. How would you ensure consistency and avoid double-counting?

- Explain how to account for ecosystem services flows in physical units (e.g., m^3 of water, tonnes of carbon sequestered). How do these relate to extent and condition accounts?

- Discuss the temporal resolution needed for different types of physical accounts. Should extent accounts be annual, decadal, or event-driven (e.g., after fires)?
- Explain how to aggregate physical accounts across different spatial scales (local, regional, national). What are the challenges of upscaling?
- Propose a set of core indicators for ecosystem condition that could be applied globally across different biomes. Justify your choices.

9.5 References

[1] United Nations. (2021). *System of Environmental-Economic Accounting——Ecosystem Accounting (SEEA EA)*. United Nations.

[2] Hein, L., van Koppen, K., de Groot, R. S., & van Ierland, E. C. (2006). Spatial scales, stakeholders and the valuation of ecosystem services. *Ecological Economics*, 57(2), 209-228.

[3] Mace, G. M., Collar, N. J., Gaston, K. J., Hilton-Taylor, C., Akçakaya, H. R., Leader-Williams, N., … & Milner-Gulland, E. J. (2008). Quantification of extinction risk: IUCN's system for classifying threatened species. *Conservation Biology*, 22(6), 1424-1442.

[4] Caswell, H. (2001). *Matrix population models: Construction, analysis, and interpretation* (2nd ed.). Sinauer Associates.

[5] Morris, W. F., & Doak, D. F. (2002). *Quantitative conservation biology*. Sinauer Associates.

[6] Eigenbrod, F., Armsworth, P. R., Anderson, B. J., Heinemeyer, A., Gillings, S., Roy, D. B., … & Gaston, K. J. (2010). The impact of proxy-based methods on mapping the distribution of ecosystem services. *Journal of Applied Ecology*, 47(2), 377-385.

[7] Boyd, J., & Banzhaf, S. (2007). What are ecosystem services? The need for standardized environmental accounting units. *Ecological Economics*, 63(2-3), 616-626.

[8] Pontius Jr, R. G., Shusas, E., & McEachern, M. (2004). Detecting important categorical land changes while accounting for persistence. *Agriculture, Ecosystems & Environment*, 101(2-3), 251-268.

[9] Lande, R., Engen, S., & Sæther, B. E. (2003). *Stochastic population dynamics in ecology and conservation*. Oxford University Press.

[10] Keith, D. A., Rodríguez, J. P., Brooks, T. M., Burgman, M. A., Barrow, E. G., Bland, L., … & Spalding, M. D. (2015). The IUCN Red List of Ecosystems: Motivations, challenges, and applications. *Conservation Letters*, 8(3), 214-226.

Chapter 10: Ecosystem Services Accounts

Building on the physical accounts for ecosystems, ecosystem services accounts track the flow of services from ecosystems to people. These accounts can be compiled in both physical and monetary terms and are a key component of the System of Environmental-Economic Accounting—— Ecosystem Accounting (SEEA EA). This chapter formalizes the mathematical foundations of ecosystem services accounting.

10.1 Physical Flow Accounts

Physical flow accounts measure the quantity of ecosystem services that are generated and used in a given period. They provide a quantitative basis for assessing the contribution of ecosystems to the economy and society.

Theorem 10.1: Ecosystem Services Supply-Use Framework

Statement: The physical flow of ecosystem services within a defined accounting period and region can be represented by a supply-use identity, where the total supply of each service equals its total use. For a set of m ecosystem services and n economic sectors, this can be expressed in matrix form.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let S be an $m \times 1$ vector of the total supply of each ecosystem service. Let U be an $m \times n$ matrix where element U_{jk} is the use of service j by economic sector k. Let e be an $n \times 1$ vector of ones.

The supply-use balance is given by:

$$S = Ue$$

This states that the total supply vector S is equal to the sum of uses across all sectors, obtained by post-multiplying the Use matrix U by a summation vector of ones.

Proof of the Supply-Use Identity:

The identity rests on the principle of conservation of mass for non-storable flows. For any given ecosystem service j, its total supply (S_j) within a region must equal its total use within that same region, assuming no net trade or stock changes.

- **Total Supply** (S_j): The total supply of service j is the aggregation of the service provided by all ecosystem assets within the accounting area.

- **Total Use** (U_j): The total use of service j is the sum of its consumption by all economic sectors (including households, government, and industries).

$$U_j = \sum_{k=1}^{n} U_{jk}$$

- **The Identity:** The conservation principle dictates that for each service j, supply equals use:

$$S_j = \sum_{k=1}^{n} U_{jk}$$

- **Matrix Form:** Expressing this for all m services simultaneously gives the vector equation:

$$\begin{pmatrix} S_1 \\ S_2 \\ \vdots \\ S_m \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \sum_{k=1}^{n} U_{1k} \\ \sum_{k=1}^{n} U_{2k} \\ \vdots \\ \sum_{k=1}^{n} U_{mk} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} U_{11} & U_{12} & \cdots & U_{1n} \\ U_{21} & U_{22} & \cdots & U_{2n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ U_{m1} & U_{m2} & \cdots & U_{mn} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ \vdots \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = Ue$$

This completes the proof.

Q.E.D.

Properties and Assumptions:

5. **Linearity:** The model assumes that the total use is a linear sum of uses by different sectors.
6. **Homogeneity:** Each service j is assumed to be homogeneous, regardless of which ecosystem asset provides it or which sector uses it.

7. **Closed System:** The basic framework assumes no cross-boundary flows (imports/exports). If trade occurs, the equation is modified:

$$S + I = Ue + E$$

8. where I and E are import and export vectors, respectively.
9. **No Stock Changes:** The framework is for flows and assumes services are non-storable (e.g., pollination, recreation). For storable goods (like timber or water), a change in stocks term ($\Delta Stock$) would be included:

$$S + I = Ue + E + \Delta Stock$$

Example 10.1: Water provision accounts

Region: 3 watersheds, 4 user sectors

Supply (million m³/year):

Watershed	Forest	Grassland	Wetland	Total Supply
A	120	30	15	165
B	80	45	20	145
C	60	25	10	95
Total	**260**	**100**	**45**	**405**

Use by sector (million m³/year):

Sector	Use
Public water supply	150
Irrigation	180
Industry	50
Environment (minimum flow)	25
Total	**405**

Balance check: Supply = Use ✓

Return flows: - Public supply: 120 m³ (80% return rate) - Irrigation: 36 m³ (20% return rate) - Industry: 40 m³ (80% return rate) - Total return: 196 m³

Net consumption: 405 - 196 = 209 m³

Example 10.2: Crop pollination accounts

Pollination-dependent crops in region:

Crop	Area (ha)	Yield without pollination (t/ha)	Yield with pollination (t/ha)	Pollination dependency
Apples	500	2.0	15.0	0.867
Almonds	300	0.5	2.0	0.750
Blueberries	200	1.0	4.0	0.750

Pollination dependency:

$$PD = \frac{Y_{poll} - Y_{no-poll}}{Y_{poll}}$$

Apple:

$$PD_{apple} = \frac{15.0 - 2.0}{15.0} = 0.867$$

Total pollination service (tonnes):

Crop	Total yield	Yield from pollination	Service flow (t)
Apples	7,500	6,500	6,500
Almonds	600	450	450
Blueberries	800	600	600
Total	**8,900**	**7,550**	**7,550**

Percentage of total production from pollination: 7,550/8,900 = 85%

Example 10.3: Carbon sequestration account

Forest carbon flows (Mt C/year):

Supply (sequestration): - Gross Primary Production (GPP): 150 - Autotrophic Respiration: -60 - Net Primary Production (NPP): 90 - Heterotrophic Respiration: -35 - **Net Ecosystem Production (NEP):** 55

Use (removals from atmosphere): - Biomass increment: 40 - Soil carbon accumulation: 15 - **Total:** 55 ✓

Losses: - Deforestation emissions: -12 - Forest degradation: -5 - Fire: -3 - **Total losses:** -20

Net carbon service: 55 - 20 = 35 Mt C/year

CO_2 equivalent: 35 × 44/12 = 128 Mt CO_2/year

Example 10.4: Flood regulation service

Wetland flood storage:

Service provision function:

$$V_{storage} = A_{wetland} \times d_{avg} \times f_{capacity}$$

where: - $A_{wetland}$ = 2,500 ha — d_{avg} = 1.5 m (average storage depth) — $f_{capacity}$ = 0.8 (capacity utilization factor)

$$V_{storage} = 2{,}500 \times 10{,}000 \times 1.5 \times 0.8 = 30{,}000{,}000 \text{ m}^3$$

Beneficiaries (distance decay with $\lambda = 0.5$ km^{-1}):

Community	Distance (km)	Weight w	Allocation α	Protected volume (m^3)
A	2	0.368	0.45	13,500,000
B	4	0.135	0.17	5,100,000
C	6	0.050	0.06	1,800,000

D	1	0.607	0.74	22,200,000 (overlaps with A)

Note: Allocations adjusted for spatial overlap.

Example 10.5: Recreation service flow

National park visitation:

Supply: - Park capacity: 500,000 visitor-days/year - Actual visitation: 420,000 visitor-days/year - Utilization rate: 84%

Use by visitor origin:

Origin	Visitors	Visitor-days	Average stay (days)
Local (<50 km)	180,000	200,000	1.1
Regional (50-200 km)	120,000	150,000	1.25
National (>200 km)	80,000	70,000	0.875
Total	**380,000**	**420,000**	**1.11**

Service intensity by activity: - Hiking: 250,000 visitor-days - Wildlife viewing: 100,000 visitor-days - Camping: 50,000 visitor-days - Other: 20,000 visitor-days

Problem 10.1: Timber flow account construction

Construct a complete physical flow account for timber with the following data:

Forest harvest: 1,200,000 m³ **Imports:** 300,000 m³ **Exports:** 200,000 m³

Use by industry: - Construction: 700,000 m³ - Furniture: 350,000 m³ - Paper/pulp: 200,000 m³ - Fuelwood: 150,000 m³ - Waste: 100,000 m³

e) Verify the supply-use balance
f) Calculate the self-sufficiency ratio (domestic supply / total use)
g) Identify the main consuming sectors
h) Calculate the waste rate and discuss implications

Problem 10.2: Carbon sequestration account with uncertainty

For a country's forests:

Estimated NPP: 100 ± 15 Mt C/year (mean ± SD) **Estimated heterotrophic respiration:** 45 ± 10 Mt C/year **Deforestation emissions:** 8 ± 2 Mt C/year

i) Calculate NEP and its uncertainty (error propagation)

j) Calculate net carbon service and 95% confidence interval

k) Discuss how uncertainty affects carbon credit accounting

l) Propose methods to reduce uncertainty

Problem 10.3: Pollination service spatial allocation

A 5,000 ha agricultural landscape has: - 200 ha of natural habitat (pollinator source) - 4,800 ha of crops (pollinator beneficiaries)

Pollination service decays with distance: $\alpha(d) = \exp\left(\frac{-d}{500}\right)$ where d is in meters.

m) Calculate the pollination service received by a crop field 1 km from habitat

n) Map the spatial distribution of pollination services

o) Identify areas with pollination deficits

p) Propose habitat restoration locations to maximize service delivery

Problem 10.4: Multi-service accounting

A wetland provides 3 services: - Water purification: 10 million m³/year - Flood storage: 5 million m³ capacity - Recreation: 50,000 visitor-days/year

q) Discuss the challenges of aggregating these services in physical units

r) Propose a multi-dimensional service index

s) Analyze trade-offs between services (e.g., flood storage vs. recreation)

t) Design a management strategy to optimize multiple services

Problem 10.5: Temporal dynamics of service flows

Ecosystem services vary seasonally and inter-annually:

u) Design a monthly accounting framework for water provision

v) Explain how to account for extreme events (droughts, floods)

w) Discuss the concept of “service reliability” and how to quantify it

x) Propose methods to account for climate change impacts on service flows

10.2 Monetary Accounts

Monetary accounts for ecosystem services estimate the economic value of these services. This can be done using a variety of valuation methods, which can be broadly classified into market-based methods and non-market-based methods.

Theorem 10.2: Ecosystem Services Economic Valuation

Statement: The economic value of an ecosystem service is the monetary measure of the change in human well-being resulting from a change in its provision. This value is theoretically grounded in welfare economics and is estimated using concepts like consumer surplus and willingness to pay (WTP).

Mathematical Formulation:

The value of a change in an ecosystem service is the integral of the Hicksian (compensated) demand curve between the initial (Q_0) and final (Q_1) service levels. In practice, it is often approximated by the change in consumer surplus derived from the Marshallian (uncompensated) demand curve.

Consumer Surplus (CS): For a service with a demand curve $P(Q)$, the consumer surplus at quantity $Q^{¿}$ and price $P^{¿}$ is:

$$CS=\int_{P^{¿}}^{\infty} D(P)\,dP=\int_{0}^{Q^{¿}} P(Q)\,dQ-P^{¿}Q^{¿}$$

where $D(P)$ is the demand function and $P(Q)$ is the inverse demand function.

Net Present Value (NPV): For a stream of benefits (B_t) and costs (C_t) over a time horizon T, the NPV is:

$$NPV=\sum_{t=0}^{T}\frac{B_t-C_t}{¿¿}¿$$

where r is the discount rate.

Proof of the Net Present Value (NPV) Formula:

The NPV formula is derived from the principle of the time value of money. A dollar today is worth more than a dollar in the future because of the opportunity to invest it.

- **Future Value (FV):** A present sum of money PV invested at an interest rate r for one period will grow to a future value of $FV=PV(1+r)$.
- **Present Value (PV):** Conversely, the present value of a future sum FV to be received in one period is $PV=\frac{FV}{(1+r)}$. For a sum to be received in t periods, the present value is:

$$PV=\frac{FV_t}{¿¿}$$

- **Net Present Value:** The NPV of a project or asset is the sum of the present values of all its net cash flows (benefits minus costs) over its lifetime. For a stream of net benefits $NB_t=B_t-C_t$ from $t=0$ to T:

$$NPV=\sum_{t=0}^{T}PV(NB_t)=\sum_{t=0}^{T}\frac{B_t-C_t}{¿¿}¿$$

This completes the proof.

Q.E.D.

Proof of the Consumer Surplus Formula:

The consumer surplus is the net benefit a consumer receives, defined as the difference between what they are willing to pay and what they actually pay.

- **Inverse Demand Curve** ($P(Q)$): This represents the maximum price a consumer is willing to pay for the Q-th unit of a good.
- **Total Willingness to Pay (TWTP):** The total willingness to pay for a quantity $Q^¿$ is the area under the inverse demand curve from 0 to $Q^¿$.

$$TWTP = \int_0^{Q^¿} P(Q)\, dQ$$

- **Total Expenditure (TE):** The actual amount paid for quantity $Q^¿$ at a market price $P^¿$ is:

$$TE = P^¿ \times Q^¿$$

- **Consumer Surplus (CS):** The consumer surplus is the difference between the total willingness to pay and the total expenditure.

$$CS = TWTP - TE = \int_0^{Q^¿} P(Q)\, dQ - P^¿ Q^¿$$

This completes the proof.

Q.E.D.

Example 10.6: Recreation value using Travel Cost Method

National park visitor survey (n=500):

Estimated demand function:

$$Visits = 12.5 - 0.08 \times TravelCost + 0.002 \times Income$$

Average values: - Travel cost: $P^¿ = 50$ USD - Income: 40,000 USD - Predicted visits: $V^¿ = 12.5 - 0.08(50) + 0.002(40{,}000) = 88.5 \approx 89$ visits/year

Consumer surplus per person:

For linear demand, CS per visit:

$$CS_{pervisit} = \frac{1}{2 \times 0.08} = 6.25 \text{ USD}$$

Total CS per person per year:

$$CS_{person}=6.25\times 89=556 \text{ USD/year}$$

Total park value (380,000 visitors):

$$V_{total}=556\times 380{,}000=211{,}280{,}000 \text{ USD/year}$$

Example 10.7: Hedonic pricing for air quality

Regression results (n=1,200 properties):

$$\ln(Price)=10.5+0.08\times Bedrooms+0.12\times Bathrooms-0.015\times PM_{2.5}$$

where $PM_{2.5}$ is air pollution (μg/m³).

Marginal effect of air quality:

$$\frac{\partial Price}{\partial PM_{2.5}}=-0.015\times Price$$

For average house price = $300,000:

$$\frac{\partial Price}{\partial PM_{2.5}}=-0.015\times 300{,}000=-4{,}500 \text{ USD per } \mu\text{g/m}^3$$

Value of urban forest air quality improvement:

Reduction in $PM_{2.5}$: 5 μg/m³ Number of houses affected: 10,000

$$V_{airquality}=5\times 4{,}500\times 10{,}000=225{,}000{,}000 \text{ USD}$$

Example 10.8: Contingent valuation for wetland conservation

CVM survey (n=800):

Binary choice question: "Would you pay $X per year to conserve this wetland?"

Logit model results:

$$P(Yes)=\frac{1}{1+\exp(-(2.5-0.015\times Bid+0.00002\times Income))}$$

Mean WTP:

$$E[WTP] = \frac{-2.5}{-0.015} = 167 \text{ USD/household/year}$$

Total value (50,000 households in region):

$$V_{wetland} = 167 \times 50{,}000 = 8{,}350{,}000 \text{ USD/year}$$

NPV over 30 years (discount rate 3%):

$$NPV = 8{,}350{,}000 \times 1 - ¿¿$$

Example 10.9: Replacement cost for water purification

Wetland water purification service:

Current service: - Nitrogen removal: 50 tonnes N/year - Phosphorus removal: 10 tonnes P/year

Replacement cost (wastewater treatment plant):

Capital cost: - Plant construction: $15,000,000 - Lifespan: 30 years - Annualized: $15,000,000 / 19.6 = $765,000/year

Operating cost: - Energy, chemicals, labor: $500,000/year

Total annual cost:

$$V_{replacement} = 765{,}000 + 500{,}000 = 1{,}265{,}000 \text{ USD/year}$$

Per unit cost: - Nitrogen: $1,265,000 / 50 = $25,300/tonne N - Phosphorus: $1,265,000 / 10 = $126,500/tonne P

Example 10.10: Pollination service valuation

From Example 10.2:

Market value of pollination-dependent yield:

Crop	Yield from pollination (t)	Price (USD/t)	Value (USD)
Apples	6,500	800	5,200,000
Almonds	450	6,000	2,700,000
Blueberries	600	4,000	2,400,000
Total	**7,550**	-	**10,300,000**

Annual value of pollination service: $10.3 million

Replacement cost (managed bees): - Hives needed: 2,000 - Rental cost: $200/hive - Total: $400,000/year

Note: Market value >> replacement cost, indicating wild pollinators provide substantial economic benefit.

Problem 10.6: Monetary valuation of pollination

Using data from Example 10.2:

Additional information: - Apple price: $800/tonne - Almond price: $6,000/tonne - Blueberry price: $4,000/tonne

y) Calculate the total market value of pollination services
z) Calculate the value per hectare for each crop
aa) Estimate the value of a 50 ha natural habitat patch that supports pollinators
bb) Conduct a cost-benefit analysis of habitat conservation vs. conversion to agriculture

Problem 10.7: Choosing valuation methods

For each ecosystem service, identify the most appropriate valuation method and justify:

cc) **Aesthetic value of mountain scenery** visible from a highway
dd) **Flood protection** provided by upstream forest
ee) **Wild mushroom harvesting** in a public forest

ff) **Existence value** of an endangered species habitat

For each, explain: - Why the method is appropriate - Data requirements - Potential biases or limitations - How to address uncertainty

Problem 10.8: Benefit transfer with adjustments

A study estimated recreation value of a lake at $45/visit. You need to value a similar lake with differences:

Characteristic	Study site	Policy site
Size (ha)	500	800
Water quality (index)	0.75	0.60
Population within 50km	200,000	150,000
Average income	$50,000	$45,000

gg) Propose adjustment factors for each difference

hh) Calculate the adjusted value per visit

ii) Estimate total annual value (assume 100,000 visits)

jj) Discuss the reliability of benefit transfer vs. primary valuation

Problem 10.9: Discount rate sensitivity

A wetland restoration project provides $500,000/year in flood protection benefits for 50 years, with upfront cost of $8 million.

kk) Calculate NPV at discount rates of 1%, 3%, 5%, and 7%

ll) Find the internal rate of return (IRR)

mm) Discuss the ethical implications of discounting long-term environmental benefits

nn) Propose alternative approaches (e.g., declining discount rate, sustainability constraints)

Problem 10.10: Aggregating values across stakeholders

Different stakeholder groups value a forest differently:

Stakeholder	Service valued	Value (USD/ha/year)	Area of interest (ha)
Timber company	Timber	500	10,000
Water utility	Water provision	200	10,000
Tourism operator	Recreation	150	5,000
Indigenous community	Cultural/spiritual	?	10,000
Conservationists	Biodiversity	?	10,000

oo) Discuss challenges in aggregating these values

pp) Explain why some values are difficult to monetize

qq) Propose a multi-criteria decision framework

rr) Discuss the role of non-monetary values in decision-making

10.3 SEEA Ecosystem Accounting Framework

The System of Environmental-Economic Accounting (SEEA) is an international statistical standard for measuring the environment and its relationship with the economy. The SEEA Ecosystem Accounting (SEEA EA) framework provides a comprehensive framework for organizing information on ecosystems and the services they provide.

Theorem 10.3: Integrated Ecosystem Asset Accounting

Statement: The SEEA EA framework integrates physical and monetary accounts through ecosystem asset accounts. The change in the monetary value of an ecosystem asset over an accounting period can be decomposed into effects due to changes in ecosystem extent (quantity), condition (quality), and the prices of the services it provides.

Mathematical Formulation:

The value of an ecosystem asset is the net present value (NPV) of the expected future flows of ecosystem services. Let $R_j(t)$ be the annual rental value of service j at time t, which is a function of the ecosystem's extent (A), its condition (C), and the price of the service (P_j). For simplicity, let's consider a single rental value $R(A,C,P)$. The asset value V is:

$$V(A,C,P)=\sum_{t=0}^{T}\frac{R(A_t,C_t,P_t)}{¿¿}¿$$

For a perpetuity with constant rentals, this simplifies to $V=\frac{R}{r}$.

The change in asset value from time t to $t+1$ is $\Delta V=V_{t+1}-V_t$. This change can be decomposed using a first-order Taylor expansion:

$$\Delta V\approx\frac{\partial V}{\partial A}\Delta A+\frac{\partial V}{\partial C}\Delta C+\frac{\partial V}{\partial P}\Delta P$$

where: * $\Delta A=A_{t+1}-A_t$ is the change in extent. * $\Delta C=C_{t+1}-C_t$ is the change in condition. * $\Delta P=P_{t+1}-P_t$ is the change in price.

Proof of Asset Value Decomposition:

The proof demonstrates that the total change in asset value can be approximated by the sum of the partial effects of changes in its underlying drivers.

- **Total Differential:** The value of an ecosystem asset, V, is a function of its extent (A), condition (C), and the price of its services (P). We can write this as $V=V(A,C,P)$. The total differential of V is:

$$dV=\frac{\partial V}{\partial A}dA+\frac{\partial V}{\partial C}dC+\frac{\partial V}{\partial P}dP$$

- **Discrete Approximation:** For discrete changes over an accounting period (from t to $t+1$), we can approximate the infinitesimal changes (dA, dC, dP) with finite differences ($\Delta A, \Delta C, \Delta P$). This gives the first-order approximation for the total change ΔV:

$$\Delta V=V(A_{t+1},C_{t+1},P_{t+1})-V(A_t,C_t,P_t)\approx\frac{\partial V}{\partial A}\Delta A+\frac{\partial V}{\partial C}\Delta C+\frac{\partial V}{\partial P}\Delta P$$

- **Decomposition Components:**

  1. **Extent (Quantity) Effect (ΔV_{Extent}):** This term, $\frac{\partial V}{\partial A}\Delta A$, represents the change in asset value due solely to a change in the area of the ecosystem, holding condition and prices constant. It quantifies the value of ecosystem loss or expansion.

2. **Condition (Quality) Effect** ($\Delta V_{Condition}$): This term, $\frac{\partial V}{\partial C}\Delta C$, represents the change in asset value due to a change in the ecosystem's condition (e.g., through degradation or restoration), holding extent and prices constant. It quantifies the value of ecosystem degradation or enhancement.
3. **Price Effect** (ΔV_{Price}): This term, $\frac{\partial V}{\partial P}\Delta P$, represents the revaluation of the asset due to changes in the prices of the ecosystem services it provides, holding physical characteristics (extent and condition) constant.

This decomposition provides a framework for understanding the drivers of change in natural capital value. Higher-order terms (interaction effects) can be included for greater accuracy but are often omitted in practice.

Q.E.D.

Example 10.11: National ecosystem asset account

Country's forest ecosystem (2020):

Extent: 10 million ha **Condition index:** 0.75 (on 0-1 scale)

Annual service flows (monetary):

Service	Value (million USD/year)
Timber	500
Carbon sequestration	300
Water provision	200
Recreation	150
Total rental value	**1,150**

Asset value (discount rate 3%, perpetuity):

$$V_{asset} = \frac{1{,}150}{0.03} = 38{,}333 \text{ million USD}$$

Per hectare: \$38,333 / 10 = \$3,833/ha

2021 changes: - Deforestation: -50,000 ha - Condition improvement (restoration): +0.02 - Price increase (carbon): +10%

Quantity effect:

$$\Delta V_{quantity} = -50{,}000 \times 3{,}833 = -192 \text{ million USD}$$

Quality effect (assuming 10% value increase from condition):

$$\Delta V_{quality} = 38{,}333 \times 0.10 \times \frac{0.02}{0.75} = +102 \text{ million USD}$$

Price effect (carbon is 26% of total):

$$\Delta V_{price} = 38{,}333 \times 0.26 \times 0.10 = +997 \text{ million USD}$$

Net change:

$$\Delta V_{asset} = -192 + 102 + 997 = +907 \text{ million USD}$$

2021 asset value: \$38,333 + 907 = \$39,240 million USD

Example 10.12: Ecosystem degradation accounting

Coastal wetland (2015-2020):

2015: - Area: 5,000 ha - Condition: 0.80 - Service value: \$2,000/ha/year - Asset value: \$2,000/0.03 × 5,000 = \$333 million

2020: - Area: 4,500 ha (10% loss) - Condition: 0.65 (19% decline) - Service value: \$1,800/ha/year (adjusted for condition) - Asset value: \$1,800/0.03 × 4,500 = \$270 million

Total degradation:

$$\Delta V = 270 - 333 = -63 \text{ million USD (19\% loss)}$$

Decomposition: - Extent effect: \$(4,500 - 5,000) ,000/0.03 = -\$33 million - Condition effect: \$4,500 (1,800 - 2,000)/0.03 = -\$30 million

Example 10.13: Ecosystem restoration investment

Degraded grassland restoration project:

Current state (degraded): - Area: 1,000 ha - Condition: 0.40 - Service value: $100/ha/year - Asset value: $100/0.03 × 1,000 = $3.33 million

Restoration cost: $2 million (one-time)

Restored state (after 5 years): - Area: 1,000 ha - Condition: 0.75 - Service value: $250/ha/year - Asset value: $250/0.03 × 1,000 = $8.33 million

NPV of restoration:

$$NPV = -2 + \frac{8.33 - 3.33}{¿¿}$$

Benefit-cost ratio: 4.31/2 = 2.16

Internal rate of return: 20.1%

Example 10.14: Linking SEEA EA to National Accounts

GDP adjustment for ecosystem degradation:

Traditional GDP: $1,000 billion **Ecosystem degradation (from Example 10.12):** -$63 million/year

Environmentally-adjusted GDP:

$$GDP_{adjusted} = GDP - \text{Ecosystem degradation}$$

$$GDP_{adjusted} = 1{,}000{,}000 - 63 = 999{,}937 \text{ million USD}$$

Genuine Savings (adjusted net savings):

$$GS = GNS - \delta_K K - \delta_N N + E_{education}$$

where: - GNS = Gross National Savings — $\delta_K K$ = depreciation of produced capital — $\delta_N N$ = depletion of natural capital (ecosystem degradation) — $E_{education}$ = education expenditure (human capital formation)

Example 10.15: Corporate ecosystem accounting

Mining company ecosystem impact:

Affected ecosystems: - Forest: 500 ha cleared - Wetland: 100 ha degraded

Ecosystem liability (restoration obligation):

Forest restoration: - Cost: $20,000/ha - Total: $10 million

Wetland mitigation: - Cost: $50,000/ha - Total: $5 million

Total liability: $15 million

Annual ecosystem service loss (until restoration): - Forest: 500 ha × $500/ha/year = $250,000/year - Wetland: 100 ha × $2,000/ha/year = $200,000/year - Total: $450,000/year

NPV of service loss (10 years until restoration, 5% discount):

$$NPV_{loss} = 450{,}000 \times 1 - ¿¿$$

Total ecosystem cost: $15 + $3.47 = $18.47 million

Problem 10.11: SEEA implementation challenges

Discuss the key challenges of implementing SEEA EA at a national level:

ss) **Data availability:** What data are needed for each account? Which are most difficult to obtain?

tt) **Methodological complexity:** Which valuation methods are most controversial? How to handle uncertainty?

uu) **Institutional coordination:** Which government agencies need to be involved? How to ensure consistency?

vv) **Policy integration:** How can ecosystem accounts inform policy decisions? Provide specific examples.

Problem 10.12: Ecosystem asset valuation

A mangrove forest provides multiple services:

Service	Annual value (USD/ha)
Coastal protection	1,500
Fishery nursery	800
Carbon sequestration	300
Tourism	200
Total	**2,800**

Area: 2,000 ha **Discount rate:** 4%

ww) Calculate the ecosystem asset value (perpetuity)

xx) Calculate the asset value with a 50-year time horizon

yy) Analyze sensitivity to discount rate (2%, 4%, 6%)

zz) Discuss the implications of time horizon choice

Problem 10.13: Decomposing asset value changes

A lake ecosystem experienced the following changes over 5 years:

2015: - Area: 5,000 ha - Condition: 0.70 - Service value: $400/ha/year

2020: - Area: 4,800 ha (pollution reduced area) - Condition: 0.80 (water quality improved) - Service value: $480/ha/year (higher due to better condition)

aaa) Calculate asset values for 2015 and 2020 (use r=3%)

bbb) Decompose the change into extent, condition, and interaction effects

ccc) Interpret the results: did the ecosystem improve or degrade overall?

ddd) Discuss policy implications

Problem 10.14: Sustainability assessment

Using ecosystem asset accounts, assess whether a country's development is sustainable:

Year 2020: - GDP: $500 billion - Produced capital: $2,000 billion - Natural capital (ecosystems): $800 billion - Human capital: $3,000 billion

Year 2021: - GDP: $520 billion (+4%) - Produced capital: $2,100 billion (+5%) - Natural capital: $780 billion (-2.5%) - Human capital: $3,100 billion (+3.3%)

eee) Calculate Genuine Savings (assume depreciation rates: produced capital 5%, natural capital change as given)

fff) Assess whether development is sustainable

ggg) Calculate the "natural capital depletion rate"

hhh) Propose policies to achieve sustainability

Problem 10.15: Integrating ecosystem accounts with SDGs

The UN Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) include targets related to ecosystems:

iii) Identify which SDGs are directly related to ecosystem accounts

jjj) Explain how SEEA EA can provide indicators for SDG monitoring

kkk) Design an integrated reporting framework linking ecosystem accounts to SDG targets

lll) Discuss challenges in using monetary valuation for SDG reporting

10.4 Supplementary Problems

- Discuss the pros and cons of putting a monetary value on ecosystem services. When is monetary valuation appropriate, and when might it be problematic?

- Explain the concept of "total economic value" (TEV) and its components. Provide examples of each component for a coral reef ecosystem.

- How can ecosystem service accounts be used to inform the design of payments for ecosystem services (PES) schemes? Provide a specific example.

- Discuss the role of corporate ecosystem accounting in improving corporate sustainability performance. How can companies integrate ecosystem accounts into financial reporting?

- What is the relationship between SEEA EA and the System of National Accounts (SNA)? How can the two systems be integrated to provide a more complete picture of economic performance?

- Explain the concept of "ecosystem service cascades" and how they complicate ecosystem accounting. How should intermediate vs. final services be treated?
- Discuss the challenges of valuing cultural ecosystem services. Are stated preference methods appropriate, or are alternative approaches needed?
- Explain how ecosystem accounts can inform natural capital accounting and "green GDP" calculations. What are the limitations of these approaches?
- Discuss the role of spatial analysis in ecosystem services accounting. How can GIS and remote sensing improve account accuracy?
- Explain how to account for ecosystem services in cost-benefit analysis of development projects. Provide a step-by-step framework.

10.5 References

[1] United Nations. (2021). *System of Environmental-Economic Accounting——Ecosystem Accounting (SEEA EA)*. United Nations.

[2] Costanza, R., d'Arge, R., de Groot, R., Farber, S., Grasso, M., Hannon, B., … & van den Belt, M. (1997). The value of the world's ecosystem services and natural capital. *Nature*, 387(6630), 253-260.

[3] TEEB. (2010). *The Economics of Ecosystems and Biodiversity: Mainstreaming the Economics of Nature: A synthesis of the approach, conclusions and recommendations of TEEB*.

[4] Bateman, I. J., Mace, G. M., Fezzi, C., Atkinson, G., & Turner, K. (2011). Economic analysis for ecosystem service assessments. *Environmental and Resource Economics*, 48(2), 177-218.

[5] Edens, B., & Hein, L. (2013). Towards a consistent approach for ecosystem accounting. *Ecological Economics*, 90, 41-52.

[6] Freeman III, A. M., Herriges, J. A., & Kling, C. L. (2014). *The measurement of environmental and resource values: Theory and methods* (3rd ed.). RFF Press.

[7] Obst, C., Hein, L., & Edens, B. (2016). National accounting and the valuation of ecosystem assets and their services. *Environmental and Resource Economics*, 64(1), 1-23.

[8] Guerry, A. D., Polasky, S., Lubchenco, J., Chaplin-Kramer, R., Daily, G. C., Griffin, R., … & Vira, B. (2015). Natural capital and ecosystem services informing decisions: From promise to practice. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 112(24), 7348-7355.

[9] Dasgupta, P. (2021). *The Economics of Biodiversity: The Dasgupta Review*. HM Treasury.

[10] Barbier, E. B. (2007). Valuing ecosystem services as productive inputs. *Economic Policy*, 22(49), 178-229.

Chapter 11: Attribution and Allocation Methods

In biodiversity accounting, it is often necessary to attribute changes in biodiversity to specific drivers or to allocate responsibility for these changes to different economic units. This chapter explores the methods for attribution and allocation in both physical and monetary terms.

11.1 Spatial Allocation

Spatial allocation involves distributing the value or impact of biodiversity change across a landscape. This can be done using a variety of methods, depending on the data available and the specific research question.

Theorem 11.1: Proximity-Based Allocation

In the absence of more detailed information, the value or impact of a biodiversity change can be allocated to the surrounding area based on proximity. For example, the value of a wetland could be allocated to the surrounding properties, with the value decreasing with distance from the wetland.

Rationale: The rationale for proximity-based allocation is rooted in the concept of **distance decay**, a geographical principle stating that the influence of a phenomenon diminishes as one moves farther away from its source. In the context of ecosystem services, the benefits derived from a particular ecosystem are often localized. For instance, the flood protection services of a wetland are most significant for properties in its immediate vicinity. Similarly, the aesthetic and recreational benefits of a park are most accessible to those living nearby. This method, while a simplification, provides a logical and practical starting point for allocation when more complex models are not feasible.

Example 11.1: Allocating wetland value

The value of a wetland for flood protection can be allocated to the properties that are located in the floodplain downstream of the wetland. The amount of value allocated to each property could be proportional to the value of the property and its elevation.

Example 11.2: Allocating tourism revenue

The tourism revenue generated by a national park can be allocated to the different ecosystems within the park based on the number of visitors to each ecosystem. This could be estimated using visitor surveys or by analyzing the spatial distribution of geotagged photos from social media.

Problem 11.1: Spatial allocation of pollination services

Design a method for allocating the value of a pollination service provided by a patch of native forest to the surrounding agricultural fields. What data would you need? What assumptions would you have to make?

Problem 11.2: Allocating park value

A new urban park is created, and property values for homes within 1 km of the park increase. The total increase in property value is estimated at \$10 million. How would you allocate this value to the different features of the park (e.g., playground, walking trails, pond)?

11.2 Temporal Allocation

Temporal allocation involves distributing the value or impact of a biodiversity change over time. This is particularly important for long-term changes, such as climate change or the recovery of a degraded ecosystem.

Theorem 11.2: Discounting and Net Present Value

Statement: The value of a future benefit or cost is typically discounted to reflect the time preference for money. The net present value (NPV) of a stream of future benefits and costs is calculated as:

$$\text{NPV} = \sum_{t=0}^{T} \frac{B_t - C_t}{\text{¿¿}} \text{¿}$$

where: - B_t = benefit at time t — C_t = cost at time t - r = discount rate - T = time horizon

Proof: The formula for Net Present Value (NPV) is derived from the concept of the **time value of money**, which posits that a sum of money today is worth more than the same sum in the future due to its potential earning capacity.

Step 1: Present Value of a Single Cash Flow

The process of calculating the present value of a future cash flow is called **discounting.** If a future cash flow at time t is C_t, and the discount rate is r, the present value PV is given by:

$$PV = \frac{C_t}{¿¿}$$

Step 2: Net Present Value of Multiple Cash Flows

The NPV of a project or investment is the sum of the present values of all expected cash flows (both positive and negative) over the life of the project. For a series of cash flows C_t from $t=0$ to T, the NPV is:

$$\text{NPV} = \sum_{t=0}^{T} \frac{C_t}{¿¿} ¿$$

Step 3: Application to Ecosystem Services

In the context of ecosystem services, C_t can be represented as the net benefit $(B_t - C_t)$, where B_t is the benefit and C_t is the cost at time t. Substituting this into the NPV formula:

$$\text{NPV} = \sum_{t=0}^{T} \frac{B_t - C_t}{¿¿} ¿$$

This completes the derivation.

Q.E.D.

Example 11.3: Valuing forest conservation

The value of conserving a forest can be estimated by calculating the NPV of the stream of ecosystem services that the forest will provide in the future, such as timber, carbon sequestration, and recreation.

Scenario: A forest provides annual ecosystem services valued at \$50,000 per year for the next 30 years. Using a discount rate of 3%, calculate the NPV.

Solution:

$$\text{NPV} = \sum_{t=0}^{30} \frac{50{,}000}{¿¿}¿$$

This is a geometric series with first term $a = 50{,}000$, common ratio $r = \frac{1}{1.03} \approx 0.9709$, and $n = 31$ terms (from $t = 0$ to $t = 30$).

Using the formula for the sum of a geometric series:

$$\text{NPV} = 50{,}000 \times 1 - ¿¿$$

Interpretation: The present value of 30 years of ecosystem services is approximately $\$1.03$ million. The choice of discount rate has a large impact: at 5%, the NPV would be only $\$768{,}600$, while at 1% it would be $\$1{,}295{,}000$.

Example 11.4: Cost-benefit analysis of restoration

A cost-benefit analysis of a wetland restoration project would compare the present value of the costs of the restoration with the present value of the future benefits, such as improved water quality, increased fish populations, and enhanced recreational opportunities.

Scenario: A wetland restoration project requires an initial investment of \$200,000 at $t = 0$. The project will generate annual benefits of \$25,000 for 20 years, starting at $t = 1$. Using a discount rate of 4%, determine if the project is economically viable.

Solution:

The NPV calculation includes the initial cost (negative cash flow) and future benefits (positive cash flows):

$$\text{NPV} = -200{,}000 + \sum_{t=1}^{20} \frac{25{,}000}{¿¿}¿$$

For the sum of discounted benefits:

$$\sum_{t=1}^{20} \frac{25{,}000}{¿¿}¿$$

Therefore:

$$\text{NPV} = -200{,}000 + 339{,}750 = \$139{,}750$$

Conclusion: Since NPV > 0, the project is economically viable. For every dollar invested, the project generates $\$1.70$ in present value terms (benefit-cost ratio = 339,750/200,000 = 1.70).

Problem 11.3: NPV calculation

A forest is projected to generate $100,000 per year in ecosystem services for the next 50 years. Calculate the NPV of these services using a discount rate of 3%. How does the NPV change if you use a discount rate of 5%?

Problem 11.4: Social cost of carbon

The social cost of carbon (SCC) is an estimate of the economic damages that would result from emitting one additional tonne of carbon dioxide into the atmosphere. The SCC is used to value the carbon sequestration service of ecosystems. Discuss the challenges of estimating the SCC. What are the key uncertainties?

11.3 Economic Allocation

Economic allocation involves attributing the value or impact of a biodiversity change to different economic sectors or activities. This can be done using input-output analysis or other economic models.

Theorem 11.3: Input-Output Analysis for Footprint Allocation

Statement: The total environmental impact (or "footprint") of a final demand for a product or service can be allocated to the various sectors of the economy using an environmentally extended input-output (EEIO) model. The total impact is the sum of direct impacts from the final producer and indirect impacts from the entire supply chain.

Mathematical Formulation:

The Leontief input-output model describes the economy with the equation:

$$x = ¿$$

where: * x is the total output vector. * y is the final demand vector. * A is the matrix of technical coefficients, where A_{ij} is the input from sector i required to produce one unit of output in sector j. * $L=¿$ is the Leontief inverse matrix, which captures both direct and indirect inputs.

Let f be a vector of environmental impacts per unit of output for each sector (e.g., GHG emissions per dollar of output). The total environmental footprint, E, is:

$$E=f^T x=f^T Ly$$

Proof of Footprint Allocation:

The proof shows how the total environmental impact is allocated across the supply chain.

- **Direct Impacts:** The direct impact of producing the final demand y is the impact of the final stage of production.
- **Indirect Impacts:** The Leontief inverse matrix, L, accounts for all the intermediate goods and services required to produce the final demand. The term Ly gives the total output from all sectors required to satisfy the final demand y.
- **Total Footprint:** By multiplying the total required output (Ly) by the environmental impact intensities of each sector (f^T), we obtain the total environmental footprint associated with the final demand.

This method allows for the allocation of the total footprint of a product or service to all the sectors that contributed to its production, providing a comprehensive view of its environmental impact.

Q.E.D.

Example 11.5: Biodiversity footprint of a product

The biodiversity footprint of a cup of coffee could be estimated by tracing the environmental impacts of all the activities involved in its production, from growing the coffee beans to transporting them to the consumer. This would include the impacts of deforestation, water use, and pesticide use.

Problem 11.5: Input-output model application

Using a simplified input-output model for a country, trace the biodiversity impacts of the construction sector. The model should show the direct impacts of the construction sector, as well as the indirect impacts from the sectors that supply materials to the construction sector (e.g., mining, forestry, manufacturing).

11.4 Supplementary Problems

- Discuss the ethical implications of discounting the future in the context of long-term environmental problems like climate change and biodiversity loss.
- Compare and contrast the use of physical and monetary units for allocating the impacts of biodiversity change.
- Explain the concept of "supply chain transparency" and how it can be used to reduce the biodiversity footprint of products.
- How can the methods for attribution and allocation be used to design more effective conservation policies?
- Discuss the challenges of allocating responsibility for biodiversity loss in a globalized world, where the consumers of products are often far removed from the places where the environmental impacts of production occur.

11.5 References

[1] Wiedmann, T., & Minx, J. (2008). A definition of 'carbon footprint'. In C. C. Pertsova, Ecological economics research trends (pp. 1-11). Nova Science Publishers.

[2] Lenzen, M., Moran, D., Kanemoto, K., Foran, B., Lobefaro, L., & Geschke, A. (2012). International trade drives biodiversity threats in developing nations. *Nature*, 486(7401), 109-112.

[3] Leontief, W. (1986). *Input-output economics*. Oxford University Press.

[4] Stern, N. (2007). *The economics of climate change: the Stern review*. Cambridge university press.

[5] Kremen, C., Williams, N. M., Aizen, M. A., Gemmill-Herren, B., LeBuhn, G., Minckley, R., … & Ricketts, T. H. (2007). Pollination and other ecosystem services produced by mobile organisms: a conceptual framework for the effects of land-use change. *Ecology letters*, 10(4), 299-314.

PART IV: IMPACT ASSESSMENT AND RISK ANALYSIS

Chapter 12: Impact Pathways and the DPSIR Framework

Understanding the causal chains that link human activities to biodiversity loss is essential for effective management. This chapter introduces the concept of impact pathways and the DPSIR framework, a widely used tool for analyzing environmental problems.

12.1 Impact Pathways

An impact pathway is a conceptual model that describes the causal chain from a human activity to its ultimate impact on biodiversity and ecosystem services.

Theorem 12.1: Causal Chain Analysis

Statement: An impact pathway can be modeled as a sequence of functional relationships that propagate an initial pressure through to a final impact. The relationship between each step in the causal chain (Pressure → State → Impact) can be quantified using mathematical functions.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let P be the level of a pressure (e.g., pollutant emissions). Let S be the state of the environment (e.g., pollutant concentration). Let I be the impact on an ecosystem or human well-being (e.g., species mortality).

The causal chain can be represented by a system of equations:

- **State Equation:** The state of the environment is a function of the pressure.

$$S = f(P)$$

- This function, f, represents the environmental fate and transport of the pressure.
- **Impact Equation:** The impact is a function of the state.

$$I = g(S)$$

- This function, g, is the dose-response function that relates the environmental state to the impact.

- **Combined Impact Pathway:** The overall relationship between pressure and impact is the composition of these functions.

$$I = g(f(P))$$

Proof of Causal Chain Propagation:

The proof follows from the definition of function composition.

- **Pressure as Input:** The process begins with a pressure P exerted on the environment.
- **State as Intermediate Output:** The function f maps the pressure P to a specific environmental state S. For any given P, the resulting state is $S = f(P)$.
- **Impact as Final Output:** The function g then maps the environmental state S to a final impact I. Substituting the expression for S, we get $I = g(S) = g(f(P))$.

This demonstrates that the impact I is a direct, albeit composite, function of the initial pressure P. The sensitivity of the impact to a change in pressure can be found using the chain rule of calculus:

$$\frac{dI}{dP} = \frac{dI}{dS} \cdot \frac{dS}{dP} = g'(S) \cdot f'(P)$$

This derivative, known as the impact factor, quantifies how much the impact changes for a one-unit change in pressure, and it is a fundamental component of footprint and life cycle assessment methodologies.

Q.E.D.

Properties:

10. **Non-linearity:** The functions f and g are often non-linear, exhibiting thresholds, saturation, and synergistic effects.

11. **Time Lags:** There can be significant time delays between a change in pressure and the resulting change in state or impact, which can be incorporated by using time-dependent functions or differential equations.
12. **Spatial Dependence:** The functions are often spatially explicit, with parameters that vary across the landscape.

Example 12.1: Deforestation impact pathway

The activity of logging can lead to the pressure of deforestation, which can cause a change in the state of the forest (e.g., reduced canopy cover, increased fragmentation), which can have an impact on forest-dependent species, which can lead to a societal response (e.g., the creation of a protected area).

Example 12.2: Invasive species impact pathway

The activity of global trade can lead to the pressure of the introduction of invasive species. This can cause a state change in the form of the establishment of a new species, which can have an impact on native species through competition and predation. The response could be the implementation of biosecurity measures and control programs.

Problem 12.1: Impact pathway diagram

Draw an impact pathway diagram for the impact of urban development on a local stream. The diagram should show the key activities, pressures, state changes, impacts, and potential responses.

Problem 12.2: Quantifying an impact pathway

For the deforestation impact pathway in Example 12.1, suggest one or more indicators that could be used to quantify each step of the pathway (Pressure, State Change, Impact).

12.2 DPSIR Framework

The DPSIR (Drivers-Pressures-State-Impacts-Responses) framework is a systems-thinking tool for analyzing environmental problems. It provides a structured way to organize information about the causes, consequences, and potential solutions to environmental problems.

Theorem 12.2: DPSIR System Dynamics

Statement: The DPSIR framework can be modeled as a system of coupled equations representing a feedback loop, where societal responses are a function of impacts, and drivers are influenced by these responses over time.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let the components of the DPSIR framework be represented by time-dependent variables: * $D(t)$: Drivers (e.g., population, GDP per capita) * $P(t)$: Pressures (e.g., emissions, land use change) * $S(t)$: State (e.g., GHG concentration, habitat area) * $I(t)$: Impacts (e.g., temperature rise, species loss) * $R(t)$: Responses (e.g., environmental policy, technological innovation)

The relationships can be expressed as a system of differential or difference equations:

- **Pressure Equation:** Pressures are a function of the Drivers.

$$P(t)=f_P(D(t))$$

- **State Equation:** The rate of change of the State is a function of the Pressures and the current State (to account for natural assimilation or regeneration).

$$\frac{dS}{dt}=f_S(P(t),S(t))$$

- **Impact Equation:** Impacts are a function of the State.

$$I(t)=f_I(S(t))$$

- **Response Equation:** Responses are a function of the Impacts.

$$R(t)=f_R(I(t))$$

- **Driver Feedback Loop:** Drivers at a future time are influenced by the responses taken today.

$$D(t+1)=f_D(D(t),R(t))$$

Proof of System Dynamics:

The proof lies in demonstrating the feedback loop structure.

- **Forward Path (D->P->S->I):** This follows the Causal Chain Analysis from Theorem 12.1. Drivers lead to Pressures, which alter the State of the environment, resulting in Impacts.
- **Feedback Path (I->R->D):** This is the crucial addition of the DPSIR framework. The Impacts on ecosystems and human well-being trigger societal Responses. These responses are not endpoints but are designed to modify the system. They can be directed at any part of the chain:
    1. Mitigating Drivers (e.g., policies to reduce consumption).
    2. Reducing Pressures (e.g., emissions standards).
    3. Restoring State (e.g., ecosystem restoration projects). The function $D(t+1)=f_D(D(t), R(t))$ explicitly closes the loop, showing that societal actions can alter the underlying drivers of the problem over time.
- **Dynamic System:** The presence of feedback loops and time-dependencies (as shown by the differential equation for State and the time-step for Drivers) makes the DPSIR framework a dynamic system. Its behavior over time depends on the functional forms and parameters of the linking equations, including the strength and time lags of the feedback loops.

This system dynamics perspective transforms the DPSIR from a simple descriptive framework into a potential quantitative modeling tool for exploring policy scenarios and future environmental trajectories.

Q.E.D.

Example 12.3: DPSIR for climate change

13. **Driver:** Global population growth and economic development.
14. **Pressure:** Greenhouse gas emissions from burning fossil fuels.
15. **State:** Increased concentration of greenhouse gases in the atmosphere, leading to global warming.
16. **Impact:** Sea level rise, more extreme weather events, impacts on agriculture and human health.

17. **Response:** International agreements to reduce emissions, development of renewable energy technologies.

Example 12.4: DPSIR for agricultural intensification

18. **Driver:** Growing demand for food and biofuels.
19. **Pressure:** Increased use of fertilizers and pesticides, conversion of natural habitats to agriculture.
20. **State:** Decline in water quality, loss of biodiversity, soil degradation.
21. **Impact:** Eutrophication of waterways, loss of pollination services, reduced long-term agricultural productivity.
22. **Response:** Agri-environment schemes that pay farmers to adopt more sustainable practices, development of precision agriculture technologies.

Problem 12.3: DPSIR analysis

Apply the DPSIR framework to the problem of plastic pollution in the ocean. Identify the key drivers, pressures, state changes, impacts, and potential responses.

Problem 12.4: DPSIR for a local issue

Choose a local environmental issue in your area (e.g., traffic congestion, a proposed new development) and analyze it using the DPSIR framework.

12.3 Supplementary Problems

- Compare and contrast the impact pathway approach and the DPSIR framework. What are the strengths and weaknesses of each?
- How can the DPSIR framework be used to identify indicators for monitoring the state of the environment and the effectiveness of responses?
- Discuss the limitations of the DPSIR framework. For example, does it adequately capture the complexity of social-ecological systems?
- The “I” in DPSIR can stand for both “Impact” on ecosystems and “Impact” on human well-being. Discuss the importance of distinguishing between these two types of impacts.

- How can the DPSIR framework be linked to the ecosystem services cascade model (which links ecosystem structures and functions to human well-being)?

12.4 References

[1] European Environment Agency. (1999). *Environmental indicators: typology and overview*.

[2] OECD. (1993). *OECD core set of indicators for environmental performance reviews*.

[3] Smeets, E., & Weterings, R. (1999). *Environmental indicators: Typology and overview*. European Environment Agency.

[4] Gabrielsen, P., & Bosch, P. (2003). *Environmental indicators: Typology and use in reporting*. European Environment Agency.

[5] Patrício, J., Elliott, M., Mazik, K., Papadopoulou, K. N., & Smith, C. J. (2016). DPSIR——Two decades of trying to develop a user-friendly framework for marine environmental management. *Frontiers in Marine Science*, 3, 177.

Chapter 13: Biodiversity Footprinting

Biodiversity footprinting is a method for assessing the biodiversity impact of a product, company, or country. It involves tracing the environmental impacts of an entity along its entire supply chain and converting these impacts into a single, standardized metric of biodiversity loss.

13.1 Product Biodiversity Footprint

A product biodiversity footprint assesses the biodiversity impact of a single product, from cradle to grave.

Theorem 13.1: Life Cycle Assessment (LCA)

Statement: The biodiversity footprint of a product is the sum of the biodiversity impacts of all environmental pressures across its life cycle. This is calculated by multiplying the amount of each pressure by a characterization factor that translates the pressure into a common unit of biodiversity impact.

Mathematical Formulation:

The biodiversity footprint (BF) of a product is given by:

$$BF = \sum_i \sum_j P_{ij} \times CF_j$$

where: * i is the life cycle stage (e.g., raw material extraction, manufacturing, use, disposal). * j is the type of environmental pressure (e.g., land use, GHG emissions, water consumption). * P_{ij} is the quantity of pressure j at life cycle stage i (e.g., kg of CO2, m² of land occupied). * CF_j is the biodiversity characterization factor for pressure j. This factor converts the pressure into a standardized biodiversity impact unit (e.g., Potentially Disappeared Fraction of species per kg of CO2).

Proof of Footprint Calculation:

The proof is based on the principle of linear aggregation of impacts.

- **Life Cycle Inventory (LCI):** The first step in an LCA is to compile an inventory of all environmental pressures (P_{ij}) associated with the product's life cycle. This is a comprehensive list of all inputs and outputs.

- **Impact Characterization:** Each pressure j is assumed to have a proportional impact on biodiversity. The characterization factor, CF_j, represents this proportionality constant. It is derived from ecological models that link the pressure to a biodiversity outcome (e.g., species loss).

- **Impact Calculation:** The total biodiversity impact is the sum of the impacts from all pressures across all life cycle stages. The impact of a single pressure P_{ij} is $P_{ij} \times CF_j$. Summing these impacts across all pressures and life cycle stages gives the total biodiversity footprint:

$$BF = \sum_i \sum_j P_{ij} \times CF_j$$

This linear summation assumes that the impacts of different pressures are additive and independent. While this is a simplification, it provides a tractable method for comparing the overall biodiversity performance of different products.

Q.E.D.

Example 13.1: Coffee footprint

The biodiversity footprint of a cup of coffee would include the impacts of: - **Deforestation:** for coffee plantations - **Water use:** for irrigation - **Pesticide use:** to control pests - **Carbon emissions:** from transportation and processing

These impacts would be converted into a single metric of biodiversity loss, such as Potentially Disappeared Fraction of species (PDF).

Example 13.2: Cotton t-shirt footprint

The biodiversity footprint of a cotton t-shirt would include the impacts of water use for irrigation, pesticide and fertilizer use, and the carbon emissions from manufacturing and transportation. The choice of cotton (e.g., conventional vs. organic) would have a large impact on the footprint.

Problem 13.1: Footprint calculation

Calculate the biodiversity footprint of a simple product, such as a loaf of bread. You will need to make some assumptions about the production process and the environmental impacts of each step. Use a simplified metric of biodiversity loss, such as the area of land occupied.

Problem 13.2: Comparing footprints

Compare the biodiversity footprint of a hamburger with the footprint of a vegetarian burger. What are the key differences in the environmental impacts of the two products?

13.2 Corporate Biodiversity Footprint

A corporate biodiversity footprint assesses the total biodiversity impact of a company, including its direct operations and its supply chain.

Theorem 13.2: Input-Output Based Footprinting

Statement: The total biodiversity footprint of a company can be estimated by allocating the national-level biodiversity impacts of economic sectors to the company based on its procurement activities, using an Environmentally-Extended Input-Output (EEIO) model.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let F be a matrix of biodiversity impacts per unit of output for each economic sector. Let L be the Leontief inverse matrix from Theorem 11.3. Let p be a vector representing the company's total purchases from each economic sector.

The corporate biodiversity footprint (CBF) is given by:

$$CBF = p^T (FL)$$

where the term (FL) represents the total (direct and indirect) biodiversity impact per unit of final demand for each sector's output.

Proof of Corporate Footprint Calculation:

The proof demonstrates how a company's economic activity is translated into a biodiversity footprint.

- **Economic Dependency:** A company's operations depend on purchasing goods and services from various economic sectors, represented by the procurement vector p.
- **Supply Chain Propagation:** The Leontief inverse matrix, L, translates the company's direct purchases ($\\\mathbf{p}$) into the total economic activity required across the entire economy to support that procurement. The total output required from all sectors to satisfy the company's procurement is Lp.
- **Impact Allocation:** The matrix F contains the biodiversity impact intensity for each economic sector (e.g., PDF.m².yr per dollar of output). By multiplying the total required output by these impact intensities, we can calculate the total biodiversity footprint.
- **Total Corporate Footprint:** The total corporate biodiversity footprint is the sum of the impacts allocated from each sector, which is calculated by the matrix multiplication:

$$CBF = p^T (FL)$$

This top-down approach allows for a comprehensive assessment of a company's footprint, including its complex supply chain (Scope 3) impacts, without requiring a detailed LCA of every single product.

Q.E.D.

Example 13.3: Footprint of a retailer

A large retailer could use an EEIO model to estimate the biodiversity footprint of all the products it sells. This would involve linking the company's procurement data to the EEIO model to estimate the environmental impacts of its supply chain. The results could be used to identify the product categories with the highest biodiversity impact and to prioritize actions to reduce the footprint.

Example 13.4: Footprint of a financial institution

A financial institution could use an EEIO model to estimate the biodiversity footprint of its investment portfolio. This would involve linking the financial data for each company in the portfolio to the EEIO model to estimate the environmental impacts of the companies' operations and supply chains. The results could be used to engage with companies to improve their environmental performance and to de-risk the portfolio.

Problem 13.3: Corporate footprint analysis

Choose a large, publicly traded company and use an EEIO model to estimate its biodiversity footprint. You can use a publicly available EEIO model, such as the Global Trade Analysis Project (GTAP) model. What are the key drivers of the company's footprint? How could the company reduce its footprint?

Problem 13.4: Scope 1, 2, and 3 impacts

The Greenhouse Gas Protocol categorizes a company's emissions into three scopes: Scope 1 (direct emissions), Scope 2 (indirect emissions from purchased electricity), and Scope 3 (all other indirect emissions, including the supply chain). How could this framework be adapted to biodiversity footprinting? What are the challenges of measuring Scope 3 biodiversity impacts?

13.3 Key Footprinting Metrics

A variety of metrics have been developed to quantify biodiversity loss in footprinting studies. These metrics can be broadly classified into two categories: area-based metrics and species-based metrics.

Theorem 13.3: Potentially Disappeared Fraction (PDF) of Species

Statement: The Potentially Disappeared Fraction (PDF) of species is a metric that quantifies the potential loss of species richness in a given area due to an environmental pressure. It is calculated as the product of the area affected and the species loss rate per unit area for a specific pressure.

Mathematical Formulation:

The biodiversity impact, measured in PDF.m^2.yr, is calculated as:

$$Impact\left(PDF.m^2.yr\right)=\sum_k A_k \times D_k \times S_k$$

where: * k is the land use type or environmental pressure. * A_k is the area affected by the pressure (in m²). * D_k is the duration of the pressure (in years). * S_k is the species loss rate per unit of area and time for pressure k (in PDF.m⁻².yr⁻¹).

The species loss rate, S_k, is often derived from species-area relationship (SAR) models, which relate the number of species to the area of habitat.

Proof of PDF Calculation:

The proof demonstrates how the PDF metric is constructed from fundamental ecological principles.

- **Species-Area Relationship (SAR):** The number of species N in an area A is often modeled by a power law: $N=cA^z$, where c is a constant and z is the species-area exponent.

- **Species Loss:** When a natural habitat of area A_{ref} is converted to a land use type k with area A_k, the number of species is expected to decline. The number of species remaining in the disturbed habitat is $N_k=c¿$. The number of species lost is $N_{ref}-N_k$.

- **Potentially Disappeared Fraction (PDF):** The PDF is the fraction of species lost relative to the reference state.

$$PDF_k=\frac{N_{ref}-N_k}{N_{ref}}=1-\frac{N_k}{N_{ref}}=1-\left(\frac{A_k}{A_{ref}}\right)^z$$

- **Impact Metric:** To create a practical metric for LCA, the PDF is expressed per unit of area and time. This involves calculating the species loss rate (S_k) for different pressures based on empirical data and ecological models. The total impact is then the sum of the impacts from all pressures, weighted by the area and duration of each pressure.

This provides a standardized way to quantify and compare the biodiversity impacts of different activities.

Q.E.D.

Example 13.5: PDF for land use

The PDF for land use is a measure of the potential loss of species due to the conversion of natural habitats to other land uses, such as agriculture or urban areas. The PDF value is typically higher for more intensive land uses, such as urban areas, and lower for less intensive land uses, such as extensive grazing.

Problem 13.5: Metric selection

Discuss the pros and cons of different biodiversity footprinting metrics. What are the key considerations when choosing a metric for a particular application?

13.4 Supplementary Problems

- Discuss the limitations of biodiversity footprinting. For example, does it adequately capture the complexity of biodiversity and the dynamic nature of ecosystems?
- How can biodiversity footprinting be used to inform consumer choice and to promote more sustainable consumption patterns?
- What is the role of certification schemes, such as the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) and the Marine Stewardship Council (MSC), in reducing the biodiversity footprint of products?
- Discuss the concept of a "biodiversity handprint," which measures the positive impacts of a company or product on biodiversity.
- How can biodiversity footprinting be integrated with other environmental footprinting methods, such as carbon footprinting and water footprinting, to provide a more comprehensive assessment of the environmental performance of a product or company?

13.5 References

[1] Lenzen, M., Moran, D., Kanemoto, K., Foran, B., Lobefaro, L., & Geschke, A. (2012). International trade drives biodiversity threats in developing nations. *Nature*, 486(7401), 109-112.

[2] Chaudhary, A., & Kastner, T. (2016). Land use biodiversity impacts embodied in international food trade. *Global environmental change*, 38, 195-204.

[3] de Schryver, A. M., van der Voet, E., & van de Meent, D. (2010). Potentially disappeared fraction of species as a measure of biodiversity loss in life-cycle impact assessment. *Environmental science & technology*, 44(19), 7495-7501.

[4] Hanafiah, M. M., Xenopoulos, M. A., Pfister, S., Leuven, R. S., & Huijbregts, M. A. (2011). Characterization factors for water consumption and land use based on freshwater fish species extinction. *Environmental science & technology*, 45(12), 5272-5278.

[5] Bjørn, A., & Trolle, D. (2018). The biodiversity handprint: A new perspective on corporate biodiversity performance. *Business Strategy and the Environment*, 27(8), 1361-1372.

Chapter 14: Species Sensitivity and Vulnerability Assessment

Not all species are equally sensitive to environmental pressures. Understanding which species are most vulnerable is crucial for prioritizing conservation efforts. This chapter explores methods for assessing the sensitivity and vulnerability of species to various threats.

14.1 Species Sensitivity Distributions (SSDs)

A Species Sensitivity Distribution (SSD) is a statistical model that describes the variation in sensitivity among a group of species to a particular stressor, such as a pollutant or a change in temperature.

Theorem 14.1: SSD Construction and Hazardous Concentration

An SSD is typically constructed by fitting a cumulative distribution function (e.g., a log-normal distribution) to toxicity data for a range of species. From the SSD, we can derive the Hazardous Concentration for x% of the species (HCx), which is the concentration of the stressor at which x% of the species are expected to be affected.

Rationale: The rationale for using Species Sensitivity Distributions (SSDs) is based on the observation that different species exhibit a range of sensitivities to a given stressor. By modeling this variation as a statistical distribution, we can move beyond a single-species toxicity test and make a more holistic assessment of the risk to an entire ecosystem. The choice of a log-normal distribution is often justified by the fact that toxicity data, like many biological phenomena, tend to be log-normally distributed. The HCx value derived from the SSD provides a probabilistic and protective measure for setting environmental quality standards. For example, the HC5 is the concentration at which 95% of species are expected to be protected, which is a common benchmark in ecotoxicology.

Example 14.1: SSD for a pesticide

An SSD for a pesticide could be constructed using toxicity data (e.g., LC50 values) for a range of aquatic species, such as fish, invertebrates, and algae. The HC5, which is the concentration at which 5% of the species are affected, could then be used to set a water quality standard for the pesticide.

Example 14.2: SSD for temperature increase

An SSD for temperature increase could be constructed using data on the thermal tolerance limits of a range of species. The HC10, which is the temperature increase at which 10% of the species are expected to be lost, could be used to assess the ecological risk of climate change.

Problem 14.1: SSD construction

Given a set of LC50 values for a pollutant for 10 different fish species, construct an SSD. Plot the SSD and estimate the HC5.

Problem 14.2: SSD interpretation

Two SSDs are constructed for two different pollutants. The SSD for Pollutant A is steeper than the SSD for Pollutant B. What does this imply about the relative toxicity of the two pollutants?

14.2 Vulnerability Indices

A vulnerability index is a tool for assessing the vulnerability of a species to a particular threat, such as climate change or habitat loss. It typically combines information on the species' sensitivity, exposure, and adaptive capacity.

Theorem 14.2: Vulnerability as a Function of Exposure, Sensitivity, and Adaptive Capacity

Vulnerability (V) can be defined as a function of three components:

- **Exposure (E):** The extent to which a species is exposed to a threat.
- **Sensitivity (S):** The degree to which a species is affected by a threat.
- **Adaptive Capacity (AC):** The ability of a species to cope with a threat.

$V = f(E, S, AC)$

A species is most vulnerable if it is highly exposed, highly sensitive, and has low adaptive capacity.

Rationale: This framework for vulnerability assessment is widely adopted from the climate change literature (e.g., IPCC). Its rationale is to provide a more nuanced understanding of vulnerability by disaggregating it into three distinct components. **Exposure** is an external factor, representing the magnitude of the threat that a species experiences. **Sensitivity** is an internal factor, reflecting the species' intrinsic tolerance to the threat. **Adaptive Capacity** is also an internal factor, but it represents the species' ability to respond to the threat, for example, by moving to a new location or by changing its behavior. By considering all three components, we can get a more complete picture of a species' vulnerability. For example, a species may be highly sensitive to a threat, but if it is not exposed to it, or if it has a high adaptive capacity, it may not be vulnerable.

Example 14.3: Climate change vulnerability

A climate change vulnerability index for a bird species could include the following components: - **Exposure:** The projected change in temperature and precipitation in the species' range. - **Sensitivity:** The species' physiological tolerance to high temperatures and its dependence on climate-sensitive habitats or food sources. - **Adaptive Capacity:** The species' ability to disperse to new areas and to adapt to new conditions.

Example 14.4: Habitat loss vulnerability

A habitat loss vulnerability index for a mammal species could include: - **Exposure:** The rate of habitat loss in the species' range. - **Sensitivity:** The species' degree of habitat specialization. - **Adaptive Capacity:** The species' home range size and its ability to move through a fragmented landscape.

Problem 14.3: Vulnerability index development

Develop a simple vulnerability index for a plant species to drought. The index should include at least one indicator for each of the three components of vulnerability (exposure, sensitivity, and adaptive capacity).

Problem 14.4: Vulnerability mapping

Using your vulnerability index from Problem 14.3 and spatial data on drought projections and the species' distribution, create a map showing the areas where the species is most vulnerable to drought.

14.3 Supplementary Problems

1. Discuss the uncertainties involved in constructing SSDs and vulnerability indices.
2. How can SSDs be used to derive environmental quality standards for pollutants?
3. Explain the difference between sensitivity and vulnerability.
4. How can vulnerability assessments be used to inform conservation planning and to prioritize species and habitats for conservation action?
5. Discuss the concept of "trait-based" vulnerability assessment, which uses information on species' biological traits to predict their vulnerability to different threats.

14.4 References

[1] Posthuma, L., Suter II, G. W., & Traas, T. P. (Eds.). (2002). *Species sensitivity distributions in ecotoxicology*. CRC press.

[2] Foden, W. B., Butchart, S. H., Stuart, S. N., Vié, J. C., Akçakaya, H. R., Angulo, A., … & Mace, G. M. (2013). Identifying the world's most climate change vulnerable species: a systematic trait-based assessment of all birds, amphibians and corals. *PloS one*, 8(6), e65427.

[3] Williams, S. E., Shoo, L. P., Isaac, J. L., Hoffmann, A. A., & Langham, G. (2008). Towards an integrated framework for assessing the vulnerability of species to climate change. *PLoS biology*, 6(12), e325.

[4] Pacifici, M., Foden, W. B., Visconti, P., Watson, J. E., Butchart, S. H., Kovacs, K. M., … & Corlett, R. T. (2015). Assessing species vulnerability to climate change. *Nature Climate Change*, 5(3), 215-224.

[5] Dawson, T. P., Jackson, S. T., House, J. I., Prentice, I. C., & Mace, G. M. (2011). Beyond predictions: biodiversity conservation in a changing climate. *Science*, 332(6025), 53-58.

Figures

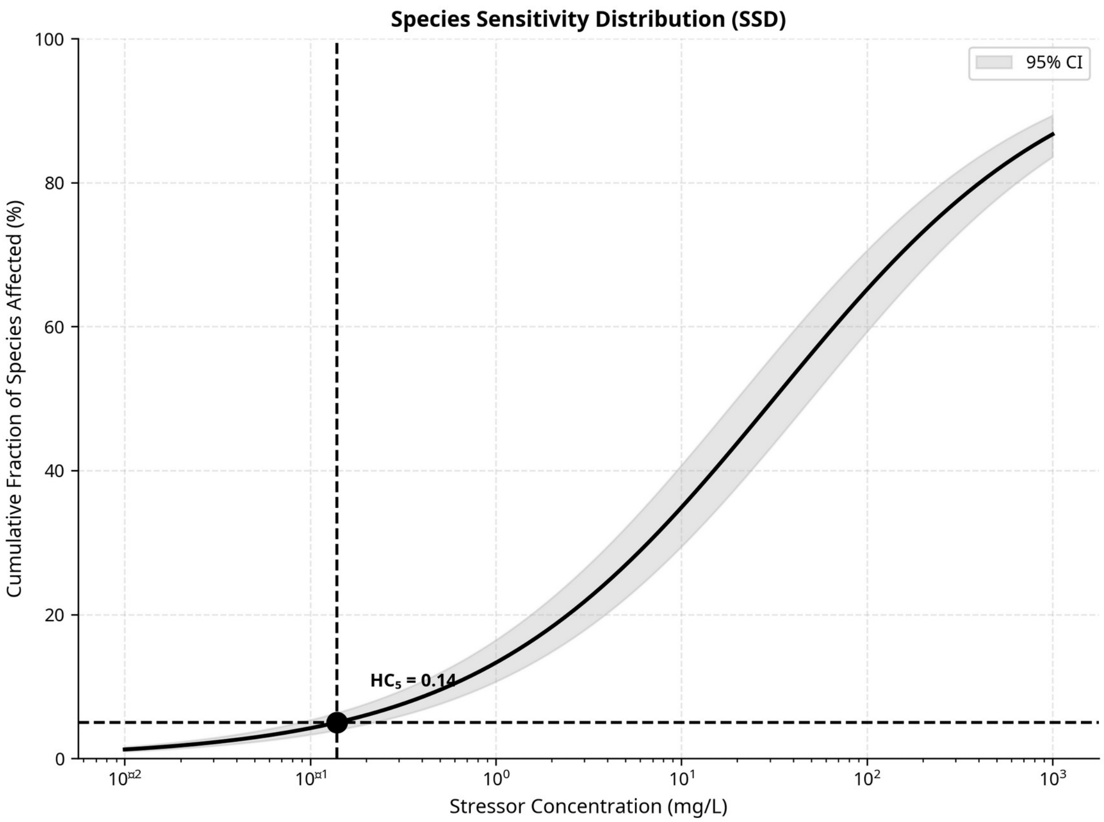

Figure 14.1: Species Sensitivity Distribution (SSD) curve.

PART V: FINANCIAL INTEGRATION AND RISK MODELING

Chapter 15: Nature-Related Financial Risk

The degradation of nature and the loss of biodiversity pose significant risks to businesses and financial institutions. This chapter introduces the concept of nature-related financial risk, its different types, and how it can be assessed and managed.

15.1 Physical Risk

Physical risk arises from the direct impacts of the degradation of nature on businesses. This can include the loss of natural resources, the disruption of supply chains, and damage to physical assets.

Theorem 15.1: Production Function with Natural Capital

Statement: A company's production (Q) is a function of its inputs, including labor (L), manufactured capital (K), and natural capital (N). A decline in natural capital can lead to a decrease in production and revenue.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let the production function be a Cobb-Douglas function:

$$Q(L, K, N) = A L^{\alpha} K^{\beta} N^{\gamma}$$

where: - Q is the quantity of output - A is total factor productivity - L is labor input - K is manufactured capital input - N is natural capital input — α, β, γ are the output elasticities of labor, manufactured capital, and natural capital, respectively.

Proof of Impact of Natural Capital Decline:

To find the impact of a change in natural capital on production, we take the partial derivative of the production function with respect to N:

$$\frac{\partial Q}{\partial N} = \gamma A L^{\alpha} K^{\beta} N^{\gamma - 1} = \gamma \frac{Q}{N}$$

Since $\gamma > 0$ (output elasticity of natural capital is positive), and $Q, N > 0$, it follows that:

$$\frac{\partial Q}{\partial N} > 0$$

This shows that a decrease in natural capital (a negative ΔN) will lead to a decrease in production (a negative ΔQ), all else being equal.

Q.E.D.

Properties and Assumptions:

- **Cobb-Douglas Form:** Assumes that the factors of production are substitutable, but with diminishing marginal returns.
- **Constant Returns to Scale:** If $\alpha + \beta + \gamma = 1$, the production function has constant returns to scale.
- **Positive Elasticities:** Assumes that all inputs have a positive impact on output.

Example 15.1: Water scarcity and agriculture

A beverage company that relies on a secure supply of clean water is exposed to physical risk from water scarcity. A prolonged drought could reduce the availability of water, forcing the company to curtail production or to invest in expensive water treatment technologies.

Quantitative Example:

Let the company's production function be $Q = 10 L^{0.5} K^{0.3} W^{0.2}$, where W is water availability. If a drought causes a 20% reduction in water availability, the new production level will be:

$$Q' = 10 L^{0.5} K^{0.3} ¿$$

This represents a **4.4% reduction in production** due to the 20% reduction in water availability.

Example 15.2: Pollinator decline and food production

A food company that produces almond milk is exposed to physical risk from the decline of pollinators, such as bees. Almond trees are highly dependent on insect pollination, and a decline in pollinator populations could lead to a reduction in almond yields and an increase in the cost of raw materials.

Problem 15.1: Physical risk identification

Identify three potential physical risks for a seafood company. For each risk, describe the potential impact on the company's operations and financial performance.

Problem 15.2: Quantifying physical risk

For the beverage company in the quantitative example above, if the initial production is 1 million units at a price of \$2 per unit, and the cost of production is \$1 per unit, calculate the financial impact of the 4.4% reduction in production.

15.2 Transition Risk

Transition risk arises from the process of adjusting to a more sustainable economy. This can include changes in policy and regulation, shifts in consumer preferences, and the development of new technologies.

Theorem 15.2: Stranded Assets and Valuation

Statement: Transition risk can be modeled as the potential for a company's assets to become "stranded" as a result of policy or market shifts. The value of a stranded asset is the difference between its expected value under a business-as-usual scenario and its value under a transition scenario.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let V_{BAU} be the expected net present value (NPV) of an asset under a business-as-usual scenario:

$$V_{BAU} = \sum_{t=0}^{T} \frac{CF_{BAU,t}}{¿¿} ¿$$

Let V_{TRANS} be the expected NPV of the asset under a transition scenario (e.g., with a carbon tax):

$$V_{TRANS} = \sum_{t=0}^{T} \frac{CF_{TRANS,t}}{¿¿} ¿$$

where: - $CF_{BAU,t}$ and $CF_{TRANS,t}$ are the cash flows at time t under the two scenarios - r is the discount rate - T is the lifetime of the asset

The value of the stranded asset (S) is:

$$S = V_{BAU} - V_{TRANS}$$

Proof of Stranding:

A transition event (e.g., a new carbon tax) reduces the expected future cash flows of the asset ($CF_{TRANS,t} < CF_{BAU,t}$). Since all other variables are constant, this directly leads to a lower NPV under the transition scenario ($V_{TRANS} < V_{BAU}$). The difference represents the loss in value, or the stranded asset value.

Q.E.D.

Example 15.3: Carbon pricing and fossil fuels

A company that owns large reserves of fossil fuels is exposed to transition risk from the implementation of a carbon price. A carbon price would increase the cost of producing and using fossil fuels, which could reduce the value of the company's reserves.

Quantitative Example:

$50\, million in cash flow per year for\, 20\, years$ ¿A coal mine is expected to generate V_{BAU} = \$593.5M at 6% discount rate). If a carbon tax is implemented that reduces cash flow by \$15 million per year, the new NPV will be:

$$V_{TRANS} = \sum_{t=1}^{20} \frac{35{,}000{,}000}{¿¿} ¿$$

The value of the stranded asset is:

$$S = \$593.5\,M - \$401.4\,M = \$192.1\,M$$

Example 15.4: Deforestation regulations and agriculture

An agricultural company that sources its commodities from areas with high rates of deforestation is exposed to transition risk from new regulations that prohibit the import of products linked to deforestation. This could force the company to find new suppliers and could disrupt its supply chain.

Problem 15.3: Transition risk identification

Identify three potential transition risks for a fast-fashion company. For each risk, describe the potential impact on the company's business model and financial performance.

Problem 15.4: Stranded asset analysis

For the fossil fuel company in the quantitative example above, calculate the stranded asset value if the carbon tax is phased in over 5 years, reducing cash flow by $3 million each year for 5 years.

15.3 Systemic Risk

Systemic risk is the risk of a breakdown of the entire financial system, as opposed to the failure of a single company. Nature-related financial risk has the potential to become a systemic risk if it triggers a cascade of failures throughout the financial system.

Theorem 15.3: Financial System Interconnectedness and Contagion

Statement: The financial system can be modeled as a network of interconnected institutions. The failure of one institution can lead to the failure of others through a process of contagion. The potential for systemic risk can be modeled using network analysis.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let the financial system be represented by a directed graph $G=(V,E)$, where: - V is the set of financial institutions (nodes) - E is the set of inter-institutional exposures (edges), where an edge (i,j) with weight w_{ij} represents an exposure of institution i to institution j.

Let A_i be the total assets of institution i, and C_i be its capital. Institution i fails if its losses exceed its capital. A shock to institution j can cause a loss to institution i of $L_{ij}=w_{ij}$.

The condition for the failure of institution i due to the failure of its counterparties is:

$$\sum_{j \in D} L_{ij} > C_i$$

where D is the set of defaulting institutions.

Proof of Contagion:

6. **Initial Shock:** A nature-related event causes an initial set of institutions D_0 to fail (e.g., insurance companies exposed to a major hurricane).
7. **First Round Contagion:** Other institutions $i \notin D_0$ are exposed to the institutions in D_0. Institution i fails if $\sum_{j \in D_0} w_{ij} > C_i$. Let the set of newly failed institutions be D_1.
8. **Second Round Contagion:** The process repeats. Institutions $k \notin (D_0 \cup D_1)$ fail if $\sum_{j \in (D_0 \cup D_1)} w_{kj} > C_k$. Let this new set be D_2.
9. **Cascade:** The contagion cascade continues until no more institutions fail in a round. The total set of failed institutions is $D_{total} = D_0 \cup D_1 \cup D_2 \cup \ldots$

If the size of D_{total} is a significant portion of the financial system, a systemic crisis has occurred.

Q.E.D.

Example 15.5: A "Green Swan" event

A "Green Swan" event is a term coined by the Bank for International Settlements to describe a climate-related financial crisis. Such an event could be triggered by a sudden and unexpected physical or transition shock, which could lead to a sharp repricing of assets and a cascade of failures throughout the financial system.

Problem 15.5: Systemic risk scenario

Develop a scenario for a nature-related systemic risk event. The scenario should describe the initial shock, the transmission channels through which the shock propagates through the financial system, and the ultimate consequences for the economy.

15.4 Supplementary Problems

10. Compare and contrast nature-related financial risk with climate-related financial risk. What are the similarities and differences?
11. Explain the concept of "double materiality" in the context of nature-related financial risk.
12. How can financial institutions integrate nature-related financial risk into their risk management frameworks?
13. Discuss the role of central banks and financial regulators in addressing nature-related systemic risk.
14. What is the Taskforce on Nature-related Financial Disclosures (TNFD) and what are its key recommendations for companies and financial institutions?

15.5 References

[1] Taskforce on Nature-related Financial Disclosures (TNFD). (2023). *The TNFD Framework*. https://tnfd.global/

[2] Bolton, P., Despres, M., Pereira da Silva, L. A., Samama, F., & Svartzman, R. (2020). *The green swan: Central banking and financial stability in the age of climate change*. Bank for International Settlements. https://www.bis.org/publ/othp31.htm

[3] Caldecott, B. (Ed.). (2021). *Stranded assets and the environment: risk, resilience and the slow-burn of climate change*. Routledge.

[4] The Dasgupta Review. (2021). *The Economics of Biodiversity: The Dasgupta Review*. HM Treasury. https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/final-report-the-economics-of-biodiversity-the-dasgupta-review

[5] Network for Greening the Financial System (NGFS). (2020). *Guide for Supervisors: Integrating climate-related and environmental risks into prudential supervision*. https://www.ngfs.net/en/publications/ngfs-guides-and-technical-documents

Chapter 16: Integration of Nature with Financial Models

To effectively manage nature-related financial risk, it is essential to integrate nature into financial models. This chapter explores how traditional financial models can be adapted to account for the dependencies and impacts of businesses on nature.

16.1 Nature-Adjusted Net Present Value (NPV)

Traditional NPV analysis often ignores the environmental externalities of a project. A nature-adjusted NPV incorporates the value of these externalities, providing a more complete picture of the project's profitability.

Theorem 16.1: Externality-Adjusted NPV

Statement: A nature-adjusted NPV can be calculated by adding the present value of net environmental externalities to the traditional NPV.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let the traditional NPV be:

$$NPV_{trad} = \sum_{t=0}^{T} \frac{B_t - C_t}{\text{¿¿}} \text{¿}$$

Let the present value of externalities be:

$$PV_{ext} = \sum_{t=0}^{T} \frac{E_t}{\text{¿¿}} \text{¿}$$

where: - B_t is the benefit at time t — C_t is the cost at time t — E_t is the value of the net environmental externalities at time t (can be positive or negative) - r is the social discount rate - T is the time horizon

The nature-adjusted NPV is:

$$NPV_{nature} = NPV_{trad} + PV_{ext} = \sum_{t=0}^{T} \frac{B_t - C_t + E_t}{\text{¿¿}} \text{¿}$$

Proof:

The proof is by construction. The traditional NPV only considers private benefits and costs. The nature-adjusted NPV, by including the monetized value of environmental externalities (E_t), provides a more complete measure of the project's value to society. If $NPV_{nature} > 0$, the project has a net positive benefit to society.

Q.E.D.

Example 16.1: NPV of a mining project

A traditional NPV analysis of a mining project might show a positive NPV. However, a nature-adjusted NPV would also consider the costs of the environmental damage caused by the mine, such as water pollution and habitat destruction. If these costs are high enough, the nature-adjusted NPV could be negative, indicating that the project is not economically viable from a societal perspective.

Quantitative Example:

A mining project has an initial investment of \$200M and is expected to generate \$40M in annual profit for 10 years. The environmental damage is estimated at \$15M per year. Using a discount rate of 8%:

$$NPV_{trad} = -200 + \sum_{t=1}^{10} \frac{40}{¿¿} ¿$$

$$PV_{ext} = \sum_{t=1}^{10} \frac{-15}{¿¿} ¿$$

$$NPV_{nature} = \$68.4M - \$100.65M = -\$32.25M$$

Since the nature-adjusted NPV is negative, the project is not socially desirable.

Example 16.2: NPV of a reforestation project

A reforestation project may have a negative NPV based on timber revenues alone. However, a nature-adjusted NPV would also consider the value of the ecosystem services provided by the forest, such as carbon sequestration, water regulation, and biodiversity conservation. These additional benefits could make the project economically attractive.

Problem 16.1: Nature-adjusted NPV calculation

A proposed dam project has an estimated cost of \$100 million and is expected to generate \$10 million per year in electricity revenues for 30 years. The project is also expected to cause \$5 million per year in environmental damage to the river ecosystem. Calculate the traditional NPV and the nature-adjusted NPV of the project, using a discount rate of 5%. Is the project a good investment from a societal perspective?

Problem 16.2: Valuing externalities

For the mining project in the quantitative example above, discuss the different methods that could be used to estimate the monetary value of the environmental damage caused by the mine. ""

16.2 Nature-Related Value at Risk (VaR)

Value at Risk (VaR) is a widely used metric for measuring financial risk. It estimates the maximum potential loss that a portfolio could suffer over a given time horizon with a certain level of confidence. A nature-related VaR extends this concept to account for nature-related risks.

Theorem 16.2: Nature-Related VaR Calculation

Statement: A nature-related VaR can be calculated by modeling the impact of different nature-related scenarios on the value of a portfolio. The VaR is then the maximum loss that is expected to occur with a certain probability.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let P be the current value of the portfolio. Let $\Delta P(s)$ be the change in the value of the portfolio under a nature-related scenario s. Let $f(s)$ be the probability distribution of the scenarios.

The VaR at a confidence level c is the value L such that the probability of the loss being greater than L is $(1-c)$:

$$P(\Delta P(s) \leq -L) = 1-c$$

To calculate this, we can use a historical simulation or a Monte Carlo simulation approach:

15. **Define Scenarios:** Develop a set of N nature-related scenarios ($s_1, s_2, \ldots, s_N$) with associated probabilities ($p_1, p_2, \ldots, p_N$).
16. **Revalue Portfolio:** For each scenario, calculate the change in the portfolio value, $\Delta P(s_i)$.
17. **Construct Loss Distribution:** Create a distribution of the portfolio losses.
18. **Calculate VaR:** The VaR at the c confidence level is the loss at the ¿ percentile of the distribution.

Proof by Construction:

The VaR is defined as the quantile of the projected profit and loss distribution. By simulating the impact of nature-related scenarios on the portfolio, we generate a distribution of potential losses. The VaR is then simply the value at the desired percentile of this distribution.

Q.E.D.

Example 16.3: VaR for an agricultural portfolio

An investment portfolio that is heavily weighted towards agricultural companies is exposed to risk from drought. A nature-related VaR could be calculated by modeling the impact of a severe drought on the revenues and profits of the companies in the portfolio. The VaR would then be the maximum loss that the portfolio is expected to suffer in the event of a drought.

Quantitative Example:

A $100M agricultural portfolio is simulated under 1,000 scenarios. The 5th percentile loss is found to be $12M. The 95% VaR is therefore $12M. This means there is a 5% chance that the portfolio will lose more than $12M over the specified time horizon due to nature-related risks.

Example 16.4: VaR for a fossil fuel portfolio

A portfolio with large holdings in fossil fuel companies is exposed to transition risk. A nature-related VaR could be calculated by modeling the impact of a new carbon tax on the value of the fossil fuel companies' reserves. The VaR would then be the maximum loss that the portfolio is expected to suffer as a result of the carbon tax.

Problem 16.3: Nature-related VaR calculation

For the agricultural portfolio in the quantitative example above, if the 1st percentile loss is $25M, what is the 99% VaR?

Problem 16.4: Limitations of VaR

Discuss the limitations of VaR as a measure of financial risk. For example, does it adequately capture the risk of extreme, low-probability events (i.e., "tail risk")?

16.3 Nature-Adjusted Credit Scoring

Credit scoring is the process of assessing the creditworthiness of a borrower. A nature-adjusted credit score would incorporate nature-related risks into the assessment, providing a more accurate picture of the borrower's ability to repay a loan.

Theorem 16.3: Credit Risk and Nature

Statement: A company's credit risk is a function of its financial performance and its exposure to various risks, including nature-related risks. A nature-adjusted credit scoring model would include variables that measure the company's dependencies and impacts on nature.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let the probability of default (PD) be modeled using a logistic regression:

$$PD = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-(\beta_0 + \beta_1 X_1 + \ldots + \beta_n X_n + \delta_1 N_1 + \ldots + \delta_m N_m)}}$$

where: - X_i are traditional financial variables (e.g., debt-to-equity ratio, profitability) — N_j are nature-related variables (e.g., water intensity, carbon emissions, land use change) — β_i and δ_j are the coefficients for the financial and nature-related variables, respectively.

Proof of Impact:

A higher value of a nature-related risk variable (e.g., higher water intensity in a water-scarce region) would, assuming a positive coefficient δ_j, increase the value of the exponent, which in turn increases the probability of default (PD). This demonstrates how nature-related risks can be formally integrated into credit risk assessment.

Q.E.D.

Example 16.5: Credit score for a forestry company

A forestry company that is certified by the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC) would likely have a better nature-adjusted credit score than a company that is not certified. This is because the FSC certification provides assurance that the company is managing its forests sustainably, which reduces its exposure to physical and transition risks.

Quantitative Example:

A credit scoring model includes a binary variable for FSC certification (1 if certified, 0 if not) with a coefficient of -0.5. A certified company would have a lower probability of default, resulting in a better credit score and a lower cost of capital.

Problem 16.5: Nature-adjusted credit scoring model

Develop a simple nature-adjusted credit scoring model for a manufacturing company. The model should include at least two nature-related variables, such as the company's water use intensity and its greenhouse gas emissions.

16.4 Supplementary Problems

19. Discuss the challenges of integrating nature into financial models. For example, how do you deal with the uncertainty and complexity of social-ecological systems?
20. How can nature-adjusted financial models be used to promote more sustainable investment decisions?
21. What is the role of financial regulators in promoting the use of nature-adjusted financial models?
22. Discuss the concept of "natural capital accounting" at the corporate level. How can it be used to inform business strategy?

23. Explain how a company's dependencies on nature can create financial risks. Provide an example of a company that is highly dependent on a specific ecosystem service.

16.5 References

[1] The Natural Capital Coalition. (2016). *Natural Capital Protocol*. https://capitalscoalition.org/natural-capital-protocol/

[2] UNEP FI. (2021). *The Principles for Responsible Banking*. https://www.unepfi.org/banking/banking-principles/

[3] GRI. (2021). *GRI 304: Biodiversity 2016*. https://www.globalreporting.org/standards/gri-standards-download-center/

[4] SASB. (2018). *SASB Conceptual Framework*. https://www.sasb.org/standards/conceptual-framework/

[5] CDSB. (2021). *CDSB Framework for reporting environmental and climate change information*. https://www.cdsb.net/what-we-do/framework

Chapter 17: Scenario Analysis and Stress Testing

Scenario analysis and stress testing are forward-looking tools that can be used to assess the resilience of a company or a financial portfolio to nature-related risks. This chapter explores how these tools can be applied in the context of biodiversity loss and ecosystem degradation.

17.1 Nature-Related Scenarios

A nature-related scenario is a plausible description of how the future might unfold, taking into account key uncertainties about the future of nature and society. Scenarios are not forecasts; rather, they are tools for exploring the potential consequences of different future pathways.

Theorem 17.1: Scenario Planning and Uncertainty

Statement: Scenario planning is a structured process for developing and using scenarios to explore the potential consequences of different future pathways under uncertainty.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let the state of the world at time t be represented by a vector of variables X_t. The evolution of the system can be described by a stochastic process:

$$X_{t+1} = f\left(X_t, \theta_t, \epsilon_t\right)$$

where: - X_t is the state vector at time t — θ_t is a vector of model parameters — ϵ_t is a vector of stochastic shocks

A scenario is a specific realization of the future pathway of the state vector, generated by making assumptions about the future evolution of the parameters and shocks.

Proof of Utility:

By exploring a range of different scenarios (i.e., different assumptions about θ_t and ϵ_t), scenario analysis allows us to assess the sensitivity of outcomes to different sources of uncertainty. This helps to identify potential risks and opportunities and to develop more robust strategies that are resilient to a range of plausible futures.

Q.E.D.

Example 17.1: Tipping Point Scenario (Amazon Rainforest)

A scenario could explore the financial implications of a tipping point in the Amazon rainforest, where large areas of the forest are converted to savanna. This would have a major impact on companies that are dependent on the Amazon for raw materials, such as agricultural and forestry companies. It would also have a major impact on the global climate, which could have knock-on effects on other sectors of the economy.

Example 17.2: Policy Shock Scenario (Global Plastics Treaty)

A scenario could explore the impact of a new global treaty to reduce plastic pollution. This would have a major impact on companies in the plastics value chain, from oil and gas producers to consumer goods companies. The scenario could explore the potential costs of complying with the treaty, as well as the potential opportunities for companies that develop innovative solutions to plastic pollution.

Example 17.3: Technology Breakthrough Scenario (Lab-grown meat)

A scenario could explore the impact of a technological breakthrough, such as the development of commercially viable lab-grown meat. This would have a major impact on the traditional livestock industry, which is a major driver of deforestation and greenhouse gas emissions. The scenario could explore the potential for stranded assets in the livestock sector, as well as the potential opportunities for companies in the alternative protein sector.

Problem 17.1: Develop a scenario

Develop a nature-related scenario for the an industry of your choice. The scenario should be based on a plausible but challenging set of assumptions about the future. Describe the key events and trends in your scenario and discuss the potential implications for the industry.

Problem 17.2: Compare exploratory vs. normative scenarios

Compare and contrast exploratory scenarios (which explore a range of possible futures) and normative scenarios (which describe a desired future). When would you use each type of scenario?
""

17.2 Stress Testing Methodologies

Stress testing is a forward-looking risk management tool that is used to assess the resilience of a financial institution to a severe but plausible shock. In the context of nature-related risk, a stress test would assess the impact of a nature-related scenario on the institution's balance sheet and income statement.

Theorem 17.2: Stress Testing and Capital Adequacy

Statement: Stress testing is used to assess the capital adequacy of a financial institution. The results of a stress test are used to determine whether the institution has sufficient capital to absorb losses under a severe but plausible scenario.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let C be the capital of a financial institution, and let $L(s)$ be the loss incurred under a stress scenario s. The institution is considered to be adequately capitalized if its capital is greater than the loss under the stress scenario:

$$C > L(s)$$

Regulators often require a capital buffer, such that the post-stress capital is above a certain minimum requirement (C_{min}):

$$C - L(s) > C_{min}$$

Proof of Concept:

Stress testing provides a forward-looking assessment of a bank's solvency. By subjecting the bank's balance sheet to a severe shock, it tests whether the existing capital is sufficient to absorb the resulting losses. If the post-stress capital falls below the regulatory minimum, the bank is under-capitalized and must take corrective action. This ensures that banks have a sufficient buffer to withstand adverse economic conditions, thereby promoting financial stability.

Q.E.D.

Example 17.4: Stress testing a bank's loan portfolio

A bank could stress test its loan portfolio to the agricultural sector against a scenario of a severe and prolonged drought. The stress test would estimate the increase in loan defaults that would be expected to occur in the event of a drought. The results could be used to assess the bank's capital adequacy and to inform its lending decisions.

Quantitative Example: A bank has a $1B loan portfolio to the agricultural sector and a capital of $100M. A stress test scenario of a severe drought is projected to cause a 15% loss on the portfolio. The expected loss is:

$$L(s) = 0.15 \times \$1B = \$150M$$

Since the loss ($150M) is greater than the bank's capital ($100M), the bank would fail the stress test and be required to raise more capital.

Example 17.5: Stress testing an insurance company's portfolio

An insurance company could stress test its property insurance portfolio against a scenario of increased wildfire risk due to climate change. The stress test would estimate the increase in insurance claims that would be expected to occur. The results could be used to adjust the company's pricing and underwriting strategies.

Problem 17.3: Design a stress test

Design a stress test for a pension fund's investment portfolio against a scenario of a rapid transition to a low-carbon economy. The stress test should consider the impact on different asset classes, such as equities, bonds, and real estate.

Problem 17.4: Reverse stress testing

Reverse stress testing starts with a pre-defined outcome (e.g., the failure of the institution) and then works backwards to identify the scenarios that could lead to that outcome. How could reverse stress testing be used to assess nature-related risks?

17.3 Supplementary Problems

24. Discuss the challenges of developing and using nature-related scenarios and stress tests. For example, how do you deal with the deep uncertainty and non-linearity of social-ecological systems?
25. What is the role of the Network for Greening the Financial System (NGFS) in developing and promoting the use of climate- and nature-related scenarios?
26. How can scenario analysis and stress testing be used to inform a company's strategy and to build resilience to nature-related risks?
27. Discuss the difference between a sensitivity analysis and a scenario analysis.
28. How can a company integrate physical and transition risks into a single, coherent scenario?

17.4 References

[1] Network for Greening the Financial System (NGFS). (2021). *NGFS Climate Scenarios for central banks and supervisors*. https://www.ngfs.net/ngfs-scenarios-portal/

[2] Task Force on Climate-related Financial Disclosures (TCFD). (2017). *Final Report: Recommendations of the Task Force on Climate-related Financial Disclosures*. https://www.fsb-tcfd.org/

[3] GCE, & UNEP FI. (2021). *The ENCORE Biodiversity Module: A tool for exploring exposure to nature-related risks*. https://encore.naturalcapital.finance/en/

[4] WWF, & PwC. (2020). *Nature's Next Wave: A guide to nature-related risks and opportunities for the finance sector*.

[5] Bank of England. (2021). *Key elements of the 2021 Biennial Exploratory Scenario: Financial risks from climate change*. https://www.bankofengland.co.uk/stress-testing/2021/key-elements-2021-biennial-exploratory-scenario-financial-risks-climate-change

Chapter 18: Uncertainty Quantification

Uncertainty is an inherent feature of biodiversity accounting. It arises from a variety of sources, including measurement error, sampling variability, and model uncertainty. This chapter explores the different sources of uncertainty in biodiversity accounting and the methods for quantifying and communicating this uncertainty.

18.1 Sources of Uncertainty

Uncertainty in biodiversity accounting can be broadly classified into two categories: aleatory uncertainty and epistemic uncertainty.

- **Aleatory uncertainty:** This is the inherent randomness or variability of a system. It is also known as statistical uncertainty. For example, the number of individuals of a species in a given area will vary from year to year due to natural fluctuations in birth and death rates.
- **Epistemic uncertainty:** This is the uncertainty that arises from a lack of knowledge. It is also known as systematic uncertainty. For example, our knowledge of the exact number of species on Earth is incomplete.

Theorem 18.1: Uncertainty Propagation

Statement: Uncertainty propagates through a model, meaning that the uncertainty in the inputs to a model will affect the uncertainty in the outputs. The propagation of uncertainty can be modeled using a variety of methods, including Taylor series expansion and Monte Carlo simulation.

Mathematical Formulation (Taylor Series Expansion):

For a model with one input variable, $Y = f(X)$, the variance of the output can be approximated by:

$$Var(Y) \approx ¿$$

For a model with multiple input variables, $Y = f(X_1, X_2, \ldots, X_n)$, the variance of the output can be approximated by:

$$Var(Y) \approx \sum_{i=1}^{n} ¿¿$$

where the partial derivatives are evaluated at the mean values of the input variables.

Proof of Concept:

The Taylor series expansion provides a linear approximation of the model around the mean of the inputs. The variance of this linear approximation is then used to approximate the variance of the output. This method shows how the variance of the output is a function of the variances of the inputs and the sensitivity of the model to each input.

Q.E.D.

Example 18.1: Measurement error

When we measure the length of a fish, there is always some measurement error. This error can be reduced by using a more precise measuring instrument or by taking multiple measurements and averaging them.

Example 18.2: Sampling variability

When we take a sample of a population, the results will vary from sample to sample. This is known as sampling variability. The amount of sampling variability can be reduced by increasing the sample size.

Example 18.3: Model uncertainty

When we use a model to predict the future, there is always some model uncertainty. This is because all models are simplifications of reality. Model uncertainty can be reduced by using more complex models or by using multiple models and comparing their predictions.

Problem 18.1: Identify sources of uncertainty

For a study that aims to estimate the total carbon stock of a forest, identify at least three potential sources of uncertainty and classify them as either aleatory or epistemic.

Problem 18.2: Uncertainty in species identification

In a citizen science project, participants are asked to identify species from photos. Misidentification is a major source of uncertainty. How could you quantify this uncertainty? What steps could you take to reduce it? ""

18.2 Probability Distributions for Biodiversity Data

Probability distributions are used to model the uncertainty in a variable. Different probability distributions are used for different types of data.

- **Binomial distribution:** Used for data that can take on one of two values, such as presence/absence.
- **Poisson distribution:** Used for count data, such as the number of individuals of a species in a quadrat.
- **Normal distribution:** Used for continuous data, such as the body size of an animal.
- **Lognormal distribution:** Used for continuous data that is skewed to the right, such as the abundance of species in a community.

Theorem 18.2: Central Limit Theorem

Statement: The Central Limit Theorem states that the sum or average of a large number of independent and identically distributed random variables will be approximately normally distributed, regardless of the underlying distribution of the variables.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let $X_1, X_2, \ldots, X_n$ be a sequence of independent and identically distributed random variables with mean μ and variance σ^2. Let $\acute{X}_n = \frac{X_1 + X_2 + \ldots + X_n}{n}$ be the sample mean.

Then, as $n \to \infty$, the distribution of the standardized sample mean approaches the standard normal distribution:

$$Z_n = \frac{(\acute{X}_n - \mu)}{(\sigma / \sqrt{n})} \underset{\rightarrow}{d} N(0,1)$$

Proof Sketch:

A formal proof of the Central Limit Theorem requires the use of characteristic functions. The characteristic function of a random variable is the Fourier transform of its probability density function. The proof involves showing that the characteristic function of the standardized sample mean converges to the characteristic function of the standard normal distribution as $n \to \infty$.

Q.E.D.

Example 18.4: Modeling species abundance

The abundance of species in a community is often found to follow a lognormal distribution. This means that there are a few very abundant species and many rare species.

Problem 18.3: Fit a distribution

Given a dataset of the body sizes of a sample of fish, fit a normal distribution to the data. Plot the histogram of the data and the fitted normal distribution. Does the normal distribution provide a good fit to the data?

18.3 Bayesian Methods

Bayesian methods are a powerful tool for quantifying and communicating uncertainty. They are based on Bayes' theorem, which states that the posterior probability of a hypothesis is proportional to the prior probability of the hypothesis multiplied by the likelihood of the data given the hypothesis.

Theorem 18.3: Bayes' Theorem

Statement: Bayes' Theorem describes how to update the probability of a hypothesis based on new evidence.

Mathematical Formulation:

$$P(H|D)=\frac{P(D|H)P(H)}{P(D)}$$

where: - $P(H|D)$ is the **posterior probability** of the hypothesis H given the data D. — $P(D|H)$ is the **likelihood** of the data D given the hypothesis H. — $P(H)$ is the **prior probability** of the hypothesis H. — $P(D)$ is the **marginal likelihood** of the data D, calculated as $P(D)=\sum_i P(D|H_i)P(H_i)$ for all possible hypotheses H_i.

For continuous parameters, the theorem is expressed in terms of probability density functions:

$$p(\theta|D)=\frac{p(D|\theta)p(\theta)}{\int p(D|\theta')p(\theta')d\theta'}$$

Proof:

From the definition of conditional probability:

29. $P(H\cap D)=P(H|D)P(D)$
30. $P(H\cap D)=P(D|H)P(H)$

Equating the two expressions for the joint probability $P(H\cap D)$ gives:

$$P(H|D)P(D)=P(D|H)P(H)$$

Dividing by $P(D)$ (assuming $P(D)\neq 0$) yields Bayes' Theorem:

$$P(H|D)=\frac{P(D|H)P(H)}{P(D)}$$

Q.E.D.

Example 18.5: Bayesian estimation of population size

A Bayesian model could be used to estimate the size of a population from mark-recapture data. The model would combine the information from the data with prior information about the population size to produce a posterior probability distribution for the population size. This distribution would represent our uncertainty about the true population size.

Problem 18.4: Bayesian updating

You are trying to estimate the probability that a newly discovered species is venomous. Your prior belief is that there is a 10% chance that the species is venomous. You then find a scientific paper that reports that a closely related species is venomous. This new information increases your belief that the new species is venomous. Use Bayes' theorem to update your prior belief and to calculate the posterior probability that the species is venomous. You will need to make an assumption about the likelihood of the new species being venomous given the information about the related species.

Problem 18.5: Prior selection

In Bayesian analysis, the choice of prior can have a significant impact on the results. Discuss the different types of priors that can be used (e.g., informative vs. uninformative) and the factors that should be considered when choosing a prior.

18.4 Supplementary Problems

31. Discuss the difference between uncertainty and variability.
32. Explain the concept of a "confidence interval" and how it is used to communicate uncertainty.
33. How can sensitivity analysis be used to assess the impact of uncertainty in the inputs to a model on the uncertainty in the outputs?
34. Discuss the challenges of communicating uncertainty to non-technical audiences, such as policymakers and the public.
35. What is the role of expert elicitation in quantifying uncertainty, particularly when data is scarce?

18.5 References

[1] Clark, J. S. (2007). *Models for ecological data: an introduction*. Princeton University Press.

[2] Gelman, A., Carlin, J. B., Stern, H. S., Dunson, D. B., Vehtari, A., & Rubin, D. B. (2013). *Bayesian data analysis*. CRC press.

[3] Ellison, A. M. (2004). Bayesian inference in ecology. *Ecology letters*, 7(6), 509-520.

[4] Spiegelhalter, D. J., Best, N. G., Carlin, B. P., & Van Der Linde, A. (2002). Bayesian measures of model complexity and fit. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society: Series B (Statistical Methodology)*, 64(4), 583-639.

[5] O'Hagan, A. (2019). Expert knowledge elicitation: subjective but scientific. *The American Statistician*, 73(sup1), 69-81.

Chapter 19: Monte Carlo Simulation

Monte Carlo simulation is a powerful computational technique for propagating uncertainty through a model. It involves running a model many times with different sets of random inputs, and then analyzing the distribution of the outputs. This chapter explores the use of Monte Carlo simulation in biodiversity accounting.

19.1 Monte Carlo Methods for Biodiversity Accounting

Monte Carlo simulation can be used to quantify the uncertainty in a wide range of biodiversity accounting applications, from estimating the size of a population to valuing the ecosystem services of a forest.

Theorem 19.1: Law of Large Numbers

Statement: The Law of Large Numbers states that as the number of simulations increases, the average of the outputs from a Monte Carlo simulation will converge to the true expected value of the output.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let $Y_1, Y_2, \ldots, Y_n$ be a sequence of independent and identically distributed random variables representing the output of a model from n simulations. Let $E[Y] = \mu$ be the true expected value of the output.

The sample mean is given by:

$$\acute{Y}_n = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^{n} Y_i$$

The Weak Law of Large Numbers states that for any $\epsilon > 0$:

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} P\left(\left|\acute{Y}_n - \mu\right| > \epsilon\right) = 0$$

The Strong Law of Large Numbers states that:

$$P\left(\lim_{n\to\infty} \acute{Y}_n = \mu\right) = 1$$

Proof Sketch (Weak Law using Chebyshev's Inequality):

Chebyshev's inequality states that for a random variable X with finite expected value μ and finite non-zero variance σ^2, for any real number $k > 0$:

$$P(|X - \mu| \geq k\sigma) \leq \frac{1}{k^2}$$

Let $X = \acute{Y}_n$. The expected value of the sample mean is $E[\acute{Y}_n] = \mu$, and its variance is $Var(\acute{Y}_n) = \frac{\sigma^2}{n}$. Applying Chebyshev's inequality:

$$P(|\acute{Y}_n - \mu| \geq \epsilon) \leq \frac{Var(\acute{Y}_n)}{\epsilon^2} = \frac{\sigma^2}{n\epsilon^2}$$

As $n \to \infty$, the right-hand side goes to 0, which proves the Weak Law of Large Numbers.

Q.E.D.

Example 19.1: Population viability analysis (PVA)

PVA is a type of Monte Carlo simulation that is used to estimate the extinction risk of a species. A PVA model simulates the future trajectory of a population, taking into account factors such as birth rates, death rates, and environmental variability. By running the simulation many times, we can estimate the probability that the population will go extinct within a certain time frame.

Example 19.2: Valuing ecosystem services

Monte Carlo simulation can be used to quantify the uncertainty in the valuation of ecosystem services. For example, to value the carbon sequestration service of a forest, we could run a Monte Carlo simulation that takes into account the uncertainty in the growth rate of the forest and the future price of carbon. The output of the simulation would be a probability distribution for the value of the carbon sequestration service.

Example 19.3: Species distribution modeling

Monte Carlo simulation can be used to assess the uncertainty in species distribution models. By running the model many times with different sets of environmental data, we can generate a map that shows the probability of a species being present in different locations.

Problem 19.1: PVA simulation

Develop a simple PVA model for a hypothetical species. The model should include parameters for the initial population size, the birth rate, the death rate, and the carrying capacity of the environment. Run a Monte Carlo simulation to estimate the extinction risk of the species over a 100-year period.

Problem 19.2: Monte Carlo for NPV

For the dam project in Problem 16.1, use a Monte Carlo simulation to quantify the uncertainty in the nature-adjusted NPV. The simulation should take into account the uncertainty in the electricity revenues and the environmental damages.

19.2 Latin Hypercube Sampling

Latin Hypercube Sampling (LHS) is a more efficient alternative to simple random sampling for Monte Carlo simulation. It involves dividing the range of each input variable into a number of equally probable intervals, and then sampling once from each interval.

Theorem 19.2: Stratified Sampling

Statement: LHS is a type of stratified sampling that ensures that the full range of each input variable is sampled, which can lead to a more accurate estimate of the output distribution with a smaller number of simulations.

Mathematical Formulation:

For a model with k input variables, $X_1, X_2, \ldots, X_k$, we want to generate n sample points.

36. **Stratify the Margins:** For each input variable X_j, divide its cumulative probability function (from 0 to 1) into n equal intervals: $\left[\frac{0,1}{n}\right), \left[\frac{1}{n},\frac{2}{n}\right), \ldots, \left[\frac{n-1}{n},1\right]$.
37. **Sample from Strata:** For each variable X_j, draw one random sample from each of the n intervals.
38. **Combine Samples:** The n samples for each variable are then randomly combined to create n k-dimensional input vectors.

Proof of Efficiency:

The variance of the sample mean from a stratified sample is generally lower than that from a simple random sample. The variance of the mean of a stratified sample is:

$$Var\left(\acute{Y}_{st}\right)=\sum_{h=1}^{L} W_h^2 \frac{Var_h}{n_h}$$

where W_h is the weight of stratum h, Var_h is the variance within stratum h, and n_h is the number of samples from stratum h. By dividing the input space into non-overlapping strata, LHS reduces the variance within each stratum, which in turn reduces the overall variance of the estimate.

Q.E.D.

Example 19.4: LHS for a complex model

For a complex model with many input variables, LHS can be much more efficient than simple random sampling. For example, in a PVA model with many demographic and environmental parameters, LHS can be used to explore the full range of possible future scenarios with a relatively small number of simulations.

Problem 19.3: LHS vs. simple random sampling

Compare the efficiency of LHS and simple random sampling for a simple model with two input variables. Run a Monte Carlo simulation with both sampling methods and compare the accuracy of the estimated output distribution for a given number of simulations.

19.3 Supplementary Problems

39. Discuss the advantages and disadvantages of Monte Carlo simulation compared to other methods for uncertainty propagation, such as Taylor series expansion.
40. Explain the concept of "variance reduction techniques" in Monte Carlo simulation.
41. How can Monte Carlo simulation be used to identify the key drivers of uncertainty in a model?
42. Discuss the computational challenges of running Monte Carlo simulations for complex models.
43. What is the role of sensitivity analysis in conjunction with Monte Carlo simulation?

19.4 References

[1] Metropolis, N., & Ulam, S. (1949). The Monte Carlo method. *Journal of the American statistical association*, 44(247), 335-341.

[2] Robert, C., & Casella, G. (2013). *Monte Carlo statistical methods*. Springer Science & Business Media.

[3] McKay, M. D., Beckman, R. J., & Conover, W. J. (1979). A comparison of three methods for selecting values of input variables in the analysis of output from a computer code. *Technometrics*, 21(2), 239-245.

[4] Morris, M. D. (1991). Factorial sampling plans for preliminary computational experiments. *Technometrics*, 33(2), 161-174.

[5] Saltelli, A., Chan, K., & Scott, E. M. (Eds.). (2000). *Sensitivity analysis* (Vol. 1). Wiley.

Chapter 20: Sensitivity and Contribution Analysis

Sensitivity analysis is the study of how the uncertainty in the output of a model can be apportioned to different sources of uncertainty in the model inputs. Contribution analysis is a related technique that is used to identify the key drivers of a particular outcome. This chapter explores the use of sensitivity and contribution analysis in biodiversity accounting.

20.1 Local and Global Sensitivity Analysis

Sensitivity analysis methods can be broadly classified into two categories: local and global.

- **Local sensitivity analysis:** This involves changing one input variable at a time, while holding all other variables constant. It is a simple and intuitive method, but it does not capture the interactions between variables.
- **Global sensitivity analysis:** This involves changing all input variables simultaneously. It is a more computationally intensive method, but it provides a more complete picture of the sensitivity of the model to its inputs.

Theorem 20.1: Sobol Indices

Statement: Sobol indices are a type of global sensitivity analysis that are used to quantify the contribution of each input variable to the variance of the model output. The first-order Sobol index measures the main effect of a variable, while the total-order Sobol index measures the main effect plus all interactions.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let the model be $Y=f(X_1,X_2,\ldots,X_k)$. The total variance of the output, $V(Y)$, can be decomposed as:

$$V(Y)=\sum_i V_i+\sum_{i<j} V_{ij}+\ldots+V_{12\ldots k}$$

where $V_i=V(E[Y|X_i])$ is the variance of the conditional expectation of Y given X_i, and V_{ij} is the variance of the interaction between X_i and X_j.

The first-order Sobol index for X_i is:

$$S_i = \frac{V_i}{V(Y)}$$

The total-order Sobol index for X_i is:

$$S_{Ti} = \frac{E\left[V\left(Y \middle| X_{\sim i}\right)\right]}{V(Y)} = 1 - \frac{V\left(E\left[Y \middle| X_{\sim i}\right]\right)}{V(Y)}$$

where $X_{\sim i}$ denotes all input variables except X_i.

Proof of Concept:

The Sobol decomposition is based on the analysis of variance (ANOVA) framework. It provides a way to attribute the total variance of the model output to the individual input variables and their interactions. The first-order index measures the direct contribution of a variable to the output variance, while the total-order index captures both the direct effect and all interaction effects involving that variable.

Q.E.D.

Example 20.1: Sensitivity analysis of a PVA model

A sensitivity analysis of a PVA model could be used to identify the demographic parameters that have the greatest impact on the extinction risk of a species. For example, the analysis might show that the extinction risk is most sensitive to the adult survival rate and the fecundity rate. This information could be used to prioritize research and monitoring efforts.

Example 20.2: Sensitivity analysis of an ecosystem model

A sensitivity analysis of an ecosystem model could be used to identify the key drivers of ecosystem resilience. For example, the analysis might show that the resilience of a coral reef to bleaching is most sensitive to the rate of ocean warming and the level of herbivory.

Problem 20.1: Local sensitivity analysis

For the PVA model in Problem 19.1, perform a local sensitivity analysis to assess the impact of a 10% change in each of the input parameters on the extinction risk.

Problem 20.2: Global sensitivity analysis

For the same PVA model, perform a global sensitivity analysis using the Sobol method. Compare the results of the global sensitivity analysis with the results of the local sensitivity analysis. What are the key differences?

20.2 Contribution Analysis

Contribution analysis is a technique that is used to identify the key drivers of a particular outcome. It is often used in footprinting studies to identify the activities or sectors that are responsible for the majority of the environmental impact.

Theorem 20.2: Decomposition Analysis

Statement: Contribution analysis is often based on decomposition analysis, which is a method for breaking down a change in an aggregate variable into the contributions of its component parts. For example, the change in a country's carbon emissions can be decomposed into the contributions of population growth, economic growth, and changes in energy intensity and carbon intensity.

Mathematical Formulation (Logarithmic Mean Divisia Index - LMDI):

Let the aggregate variable be $V=\sum_i V_i$. Let $V_i=x_{i1}x_{i2}\dots x_{ik}$. The change in V from time 0 to T can be decomposed as:

$$\Delta V=V_T-V_0=\sum_j \Delta V_{x_j}$$

where the contribution of the j-th factor is:

$$\Delta V_{x_j}=\sum_i L(V_{i,T},V_{i,0})\ln\left(\frac{x_{ij,T}}{x_{ij,0}}\right)$$

and $L(a,b)=\dfrac{a-b}{\ln a-\ln b}$ is the logarithmic mean.

Proof of Concept:

The LMDI method provides a perfect decomposition, meaning that the sum of the contributions of the individual factors is exactly equal to the total change in the aggregate variable. This is because the logarithmic mean has the property that it can be used to allocate the change in the product of several factors to the individual factors without leaving a residual term.

Q.E.D.

Example 20.3: Contribution analysis of a biodiversity footprint

A contribution analysis of a company's biodiversity footprint could be used to identify the key products, suppliers, or activities that are responsible for the majority of the impact. For example, the analysis might show that the majority of the footprint is due to the purchase of a single commodity, such as palm oil or soy.

Problem 20.3: Contribution analysis of a carbon footprint

For a country of your choice, perform a contribution analysis of the change in its carbon emissions over the past 20 years. Decompose the change in emissions into the contributions of population growth, GDP per capita, and carbon intensity of the economy using the LMDI method.

20.3 Supplementary Problems

44. Discuss the difference between sensitivity analysis and uncertainty analysis.
45. Explain the concept of "model calibration" and how it is related to sensitivity analysis.
46. How can sensitivity analysis be used to simplify a complex model?
47. Discuss the challenges of performing a sensitivity analysis for a model with a large number of input variables.
48. What is the role of visualization in communicating the results of a sensitivity analysis?

20.4 References

[1] Saltelli, A., Ratto, M., Andres, T., Campolongo, F., Cariboni, J., Gatelli, D., … & Tarantola, S. (2008). *Global sensitivity analysis: the primer*. John Wiley & Sons.

[2] Sobol, I. M. (1993). Sensitivity estimates for nonlinear mathematical models. *Mathematical modeling and computational experiments*, 1(4), 407-414.

[3] Ang, B. W. (2005). The LMDI approach to decomposition analysis: a practical guide. *Energy policy*, 33(7), 867-871.

[4] Peters, G. P., Minx, J. C., Weber, C. L., & Edenhofer, O. (2011). Growth in emission transfers via international trade from 1990 to 2008. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 108(21), 8903-8908.

[5] Pianosi, F., Beven, K., Freer, J., Hall, J. W., Rougier, J., Stephenson, D. B., & Wagener, T. (2016). Sensitivity analysis of environmental models: A systematic review with practical workflow. *Environmental Modelling & Software*, 79, 214-232.

PART VII: REPORTING STANDARDS AND FRAMEWORKS

Chapter 21: The TNFD Framework

The Taskforce on Nature-related Financial Disclosures (TNFD) is a global, market-led initiative that aims to provide a framework for companies and financial institutions to report and act on evolving nature-related risks. This chapter provides an overview of the TNFD framework and its key components.

21.1 The TNFD Pillars

The TNFD framework is based on the same four pillars as the Task Force on Climate-related Financial Disclosures (TCFD) framework:

- **Governance:** The organization's governance around nature-related risks and opportunities.
- **Strategy:** The actual and potential impacts of nature-related risks and opportunities on the organization's businesses, strategy, and financial planning.
- **Risk Management:** The processes used by the organization to identify, assess, and manage nature-related risks.
- **Metrics and Targets:** The metrics and targets used to assess and manage relevant nature-related risks and opportunities.

Theorem 21.1: Double Materiality

Statement: The TNFD framework is based on the concept of double materiality, which requires an organization to report on both its impacts on nature (impact materiality) and the impacts of nature on the organization (financial materiality).

Mathematical Formulation:

Let I be the set of all nature-related issues. An issue $i \in I$ is considered material for reporting if it meets the criteria for either impact materiality or financial materiality.

Let $M_I(i)$ be a boolean function for impact materiality and $M_F(i)$ be a boolean function for financial materiality. An issue i is material if:

$$M(i) = M_I(i) \vee M_F(i)$$

- **Impact Materiality** ($M_I(i)$): An issue is material from an impact perspective if it is linked to significant impacts on nature. This can be defined as:

$$M_I(i) = (\text{Severity}(i) > T_S) \wedge (\text{Likelihood}(i) > T_L)$$

- where T_S and T_L are thresholds for severity and likelihood.

- **Financial Materiality** ($M_F(i)$): An issue is material from a financial perspective if it could reasonably be expected to affect the organization's financial condition, financial performance, or cash flows. This can be defined as:

$$M_F(i) = (\text{Financial Impact}(i) > T_F) \wedge (\text{Probability}(i) > T_P)$$

- where T_F and T_P are thresholds for financial impact and probability.

Proof of Concept:

The double materiality principle extends the traditional focus of financial reporting to include the organization's impacts on society and the environment. The logical OR operator in the formulation ensures that an issue is considered material if it is significant from either perspective, thus providing a more holistic view of the organization's performance and its relationship with the wider world.

Q.E.D.

Example 21.1: Governance disclosure

A company could disclose the role of its board of directors in overseeing nature-related risks and opportunities. This could include a description of the board's expertise in this area and the frequency with which it discusses nature-related issues.

Example 21.2: Strategy disclosure

A company could disclose the results of a scenario analysis that it has conducted to assess the resilience of its strategy to different nature-related scenarios. This could include a description of the scenarios that were used and the potential financial implications of each scenario.

Problem 21.1: TNFD disclosure analysis

Choose a company that has started to report on nature-related risks and opportunities and analyze its disclosures against the TNFD framework. What are the strengths and weaknesses of the company's disclosures?

Problem 21.2: Double materiality assessment

For a company in the food and beverage sector, conduct a double materiality assessment to identify the key nature-related issues that are material from both a financial and an impact perspective. ""

21.2 The LEAP Approach

The TNFD recommends that companies and financial institutions use the LEAP (Locate, Evaluate, Assess, Prepare) approach to identify and assess nature-related risks and opportunities.

- **Locate:** Identify the company's interface with nature.
- **Evaluate:** Evaluate the company's dependencies and impacts on nature.
- **Assess:** Assess the company's risks and opportunities.
- **Prepare:** Prepare to respond to nature-related risks and opportunities and to report on them.

Theorem 21.2: Integrated Assessment

Statement: The LEAP approach is an integrated assessment process that brings together information on the company's operations, its dependencies and impacts on nature, and the external environment.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let the LEAP approach be represented as a sequence of functions:

49. **Locate** (f_L): This function maps the company's assets and activities (A) to a set of locations (L_s):

$$L_s = f_L(A)$$

50. **Evaluate** (f_E): This function takes the locations and evaluates the dependencies (D) and impacts (I) on nature:

$$(D, I) = f_E(L_s)$$

51. **Assess** (f_A): This function takes the dependencies and impacts and assesses the risks (R) and opportunities (O):

$$(R, O) = f_A(D, I)$$

52. **Prepare** (f_P): This function takes the risks and opportunities and formulates a response plan (P):

$$P = f_P(R, O)$$

The entire process can be represented as a composite function:

$$P = f_P\left(f_A\left(f_E\left(f_L(A)\right)\right)\right)$$

Proof of Integration:

The formulation shows that the output of each step is the input to the next, demonstrating the integrated nature of the assessment. The process starts with the company's assets and activities and ends with a response plan, with each step building on the previous one.

Q.E.D.

Example 21.3: LEAP for a mining company

A mining company could use the LEAP approach to assess the risks and opportunities associated with its operations. - **Locate:** Identify the location of its mines and the surrounding ecosystems. - **Evaluate:** Evaluate the company's dependencies on water and its impacts on water quality and biodiversity. - **Assess:** Assess the risks of water scarcity and stricter environmental regulations, as well as the opportunities for water recycling and habitat restoration. - **Prepare:** Develop a water management plan and a biodiversity action plan.

Problem 21.3: LEAP application

Apply the LEAP approach to a company in the tourism sector. What are the key nature-related risks and opportunities for this company?

21.3 TNFD Metrics

The TNFD provides a set of illustrative metrics that companies and financial institutions can use to report on their nature-related risks and opportunities. These metrics are organized into three categories:

- **Dependency and impact metrics:** Metrics that measure the company's dependencies and impacts on nature.
- **Risk and opportunity metrics:** Metrics that measure the company's exposure to nature-related risks and opportunities.
- **Response metrics:** Metrics that measure the company's response to nature-related risks and opportunities.

Theorem 21.3: SBTN and TNFD Alignment

Statement: The Science Based Targets Network (SBTN) provides a framework for companies to set science-based targets for nature that are aligned with the TNFD's disclosure recommendations.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let T be a science-based target for nature, which is a function of the current state of nature (S_0), the desired future state (S_f), and the timeframe for achieving the target (Δt):

$$T = f\left(S_0, S_f, \Delta t\right)$$

The TNFD reporting framework requires companies to disclose their targets and their performance against those targets. Let $P(t)$ be the company's performance at time t. The company's progress towards its target can be measured as:

$$\text{Progress}(t) = \frac{P(t) - S_0}{S_f - S_0}$$

A company is on track to meet its target if:

$$\text{Progress}(t) \geq \frac{t}{\Delta t}$$

Proof of Alignment:

The SBTN provides the methodology for setting the target T, while the TNFD provides the framework for reporting on the progress towards that target. The two frameworks are therefore complementary and aligned. The SBTN gives the 'what' (the target), and the TNFD gives the 'how' (the disclosure of progress).

Q.E.D.

Example 21.4: Dependency metric

A food company could report on the percentage of its raw materials that are sourced from areas with high water stress. This would be a dependency metric that would indicate the company's exposure to water scarcity risk.

Example 21.5: Impact metric

A forestry company could report on the area of its forests that are certified by the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC). This would be an impact metric that would indicate the company's performance on sustainable forest management.

Problem 21.4: Metric selection

For a company in the apparel sector, select three TNFD metrics that would be most relevant for reporting on its nature-related risks and opportunities. Justify your choice of metrics.

Problem 21.5: Target setting

For the forestry company in Example 21.5, set a science-based target for increasing the area of its FSC-certified forests. What information would you need to set this target?

21.4 Supplementary Problems

53. Discuss the relationship between the TNFD and the TCFD. What are the similarities and differences between the two frameworks?
54. How can the TNFD framework be used to promote a shift in financial flows away from activities that harm nature and towards activities that protect and restore nature?
55. What is the role of data and technology in supporting the implementation of the TNFD framework?
56. Discuss the challenges of implementing the TNFD framework, particularly for small and medium-sized enterprises (SMEs).
57. How can the TNFD framework be used to engage with investors and other stakeholders on nature-related issues?

21.5 References

[1] Taskforce on Nature-related Financial Disclosures (TNFD). (2023). *The TNFD Framework*.

[2] Task Force on Climate-related Financial Disclosures (TCFD). (2017). *Final Report: Recommendations of the Task Force on Climate-related Financial Disclosures*.

[3] Science Based Targets Network (SBTN). (2020). *SBTN Initial Guidance for Business*.

[4] GCE, & UNEP FI. (2021). *The ENCORE Biodiversity Module: A tool for exploring exposure to nature-related risks*.

[5] WEF. (2020). *Nature Risk Rising: Why the Crisis Engulfing Nature Matters for Business and the Economy and Business*.

Chapter 22: GRI Biodiversity Standards

The Global Reporting Initiative (GRI) is an independent, international organization that helps businesses and other organizations take responsibility for their impacts, by providing them with the global common language to communicate those impacts. This chapter focuses on the GRI's standards related to biodiversity, particularly the updated GRI 101: Biodiversity 2024.

22.1 GRI 101: Biodiversity 2024

GRI 101: Biodiversity 2024 is the latest GRI standard providing a framework for organizations to report on their biodiversity impacts. It emphasizes a supply chain approach and focuses on the most significant impacts.

Theorem 22.1: Impact Materiality and Reporting Boundaries

Statement: The GRI Standards are based on the principle of impact materiality. An organization is required to report on topics that represent its most significant impacts on the economy, environment, and people, including impacts on human rights. For biodiversity, this means identifying and reporting on impacts throughout the value chain, from raw material sourcing to end-of-life of products.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let I be the set of all potential biodiversity impacts. An impact $i \in I$ is considered material for reporting if its significance, $S(i)$, exceeds a certain threshold, T_S.

$$M(i) = S(i) > T_S$$

The significance of an impact is a function of its severity and likelihood:

$$S(i) = f(\text{Severity}(i), \text{Likelihood}(i))$$

- **Severity:** The severity of an impact is determined by its scale (how widespread the impact is), scope (how many people or how much of the environment is affected), and irremediable character (how difficult it is to counteract or reverse the impact).

- **Likelihood:** The likelihood of an impact is the probability of it occurring.

The reporting boundary for a material topic is the extent to which an organization is involved with the impacts. This can range from causing the impact directly, to contributing to it, to being directly linked to it through its business relationships.

Proof of Concept:

The principle of impact materiality ensures that an organization's reporting is focused on the issues where it has the greatest impact, and therefore the greatest responsibility to manage and mitigate. The value chain approach recognizes that an organization's impacts extend beyond its own operations and into its supply chain and the use of its products.

Q.E.D.

Example 22.1: Identifying material topics

A clothing company identifies that its most significant biodiversity impact is related to cotton cultivation in its supply chain. This is due to the high water use, pesticide use, and land conversion associated with conventional cotton farming. The company would then be required to report on its policies and actions to mitigate these impacts, such as sourcing more sustainable cotton.

Example 22.2: Reporting on supply chain impacts

A food company reports on its efforts to combat deforestation in its palm oil supply chain. The report includes the percentage of its palm oil that is certified by the Roundtable on Sustainable Palm Oil (RSPO), as well as information on its engagement with suppliers to improve their sustainability performance.

Problem 22.1: Materiality assessment

For a company in the automotive sector, conduct a materiality assessment to identify its most significant biodiversity impacts. Consider the entire life cycle of a car, from raw material extraction to manufacturing, use, and disposal.

Problem 22.2: Reporting on a specific impact

For one of the material impacts you identified in Problem 22.1, describe the information that the company should report according to GRI 101: Biodiversity 2024.

22.2 Identifying Material Topics and Conducting Impact Assessments

GRI 101 requires a systematic process for identifying material topics and assessing impacts.

Theorem 22.2: The Four Steps of the GRI Impact Assessment

Statement: GRI 101 outlines a four-step process for impact assessment: 1. **Understand the context:** Understand the organization's activities and business relationships, and the context in which they occur. 2. **Identify actual and potential impacts:** Identify the negative and positive impacts on biodiversity that the organization is linked to. 3. **Assess the significance of the impacts:** Assess the severity and likelihood of the impacts to identify the most significant ones. 4. **Prioritize the significant impacts for reporting:** Prioritize the most significant impacts for reporting and action.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let the impact assessment process be represented as a sequence of operations:

58. **Context Analysis** (C): This involves gathering information on the organization's activities, business relationships, and operating context.

59. **Impact Identification** ($I(C)$): This is a function that takes the context as input and generates a list of potential impacts, $I=\{i_1,i_2,\ldots,i_n\}$.

60. **Significance Assessment** ($S(i)$): For each impact $i\in I$, assess its significance as a function of its severity and likelihood:

$$S(i)=f(\text{Severity}(i),\text{Likelihood}(i))$$

61. **Prioritization** ($P(I,S)$): This involves ranking the impacts by their significance and selecting the top impacts for reporting:

$$I_{material}=\{i\in I\mid S(i)>T_S\}$$

62. where T_S is the significance threshold.

Proof of Process:

The four-step process provides a structured and systematic way to identify and prioritize an organization's most significant impacts. It ensures that the reporting is based on a rigorous assessment of the organization's activities and their consequences for biodiversity.

Q.E.D.

Example 22.3: Impact assessment for a construction company

A construction company could use the four-step process to assess its biodiversity impacts. 1. **Context:** The company operates in a region with several sensitive ecosystems. 2. **Impacts:** The company identifies potential impacts such as habitat destruction, water pollution, and noise disturbance. 3. **Significance:** The company assesses that the most significant impact is habitat destruction from land clearing for new developments. 4. **Prioritization:** The company prioritizes this impact for reporting and develops a plan to mitigate it, such as by implementing a "no-net-loss" policy for biodiversity.

Example 22.4: Assessing supply chain impacts

A technology company assesses the biodiversity impacts of its mineral sourcing. It identifies that the mining of certain minerals, such as cobalt and coltan, is associated with significant social and environmental impacts, including habitat destruction and human rights abuses. The company prioritizes this impact and engages with its suppliers to promote responsible sourcing practices.

Problem 22.3: Impact assessment application

Apply the four-step impact assessment process to a company in the pharmaceutical sector. What are the key biodiversity-related impacts for this sector?

Problem 22.4: Significance assessment

For one of the impacts you identified in Problem 22.3, assess its significance using the criteria of severity and likelihood. Justify your assessment.

22.3 Supplementary Problems

63. Compare and contrast the GRI's approach to materiality with the TNFD's approach (double materiality).
64. How can the GRI Standards be used to drive improvements in a company's biodiversity performance?
65. Discuss the challenges of collecting reliable data on biodiversity impacts in complex global supply chains.
66. What is the role of stakeholder engagement in the GRI reporting process?
67. How does GRI 101: Biodiversity 2024 relate to other international frameworks, such as the UN Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) and the Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD)?

22.4 References

[1] GRI. (2024). *GRI 101: Biodiversity 2024*.

[2] GRI. (2021). *GRI 3: Material Topics 2021*.

[3] GRI, & UNEP-WCMC. (2021). *Linking the GRI Standards and the ENCORE tool*.

[4] GRI, & Shift. (2021). *The GRI-Shift Partnership on Human Rights Disclosures*.

[5] GRI. (2020). *GRI's contributions to the SDGs*.

Chapter 23: ESRS E4 Standard

The European Sustainability Reporting Standards (ESRS) are a set of standards that will be used by companies to report on their sustainability performance under the Corporate Sustainability Reporting Directive (CSRD) of the European Union. This chapter focuses on ESRS E4, the standard on biodiversity and ecosystems.

23.1 ESRS E4 Disclosure Requirements

ESRS E4 requires companies to disclose information on their impacts, dependencies, risks, and opportunities related to biodiversity and ecosystems. The standard is aligned with the TNFD framework and the GRI Standards.

Theorem 23.1: CSRD and Double Materiality

Statement: The CSRD requires companies to report on sustainability issues from a double materiality perspective. This means that companies must report on both the impact of sustainability issues on the company (the “outside-in” perspective) and the impact of the company on sustainability issues (the “inside-out” perspective).

Mathematical Formulation:

Let S be the set of all sustainability issues. An issue $s \in S$ is considered material for reporting if it meets the criteria for either impact materiality or financial materiality.

Let $M_I(s)$ be a boolean function for impact materiality and $M_F(s)$ be a boolean function for financial materiality. An issue s is material if:

$$M(s) = M_I(s) \vee M_F(s)$$

- **Impact Materiality ($M_I(s)$):** An issue is material from an impact perspective if it is linked to significant impacts on people or the environment. This can be defined as:

$$M_I(s) = (\text{Severity}(s) > T_S) \wedge (\text{Likelihood}(s) > T_L)$$

- where T_S and T_L are thresholds for severity and likelihood.
- **Financial Materiality** ($M_F(s)$): An issue is material from a financial perspective if it could reasonably be expected to affect the company's financial condition, financial performance, or cash flows. This can be defined as:

$$M_F(s) = (\text{Financial Impact}(s) > T_F) \wedge (\text{Probability}(s) > T_P)$$

- where T_F and T_P are thresholds for financial impact and probability.

Proof of Concept:

The double materiality principle is a core component of the CSRD. It requires a company to consider two different perspectives when assessing the materiality of a sustainability issue. This ensures that the company's reporting provides a comprehensive picture of its relationship with society and the environment, and the financial risks and opportunities that arise from this relationship.

Q.E.D.

Example 23.1: Disclosure on impacts

A company would be required to disclose its material impacts on biodiversity and ecosystems, both positive and negative. This could include information on land use change, pollution, and the introduction of invasive species.

Example 23.2: Disclosure on dependencies

A company would be required to disclose its material dependencies on biodiversity and ecosystems. For example, an agricultural company would need to disclose its dependence on pollination, soil fertility, and water regulation.

Example 23.3: Disclosure on risks and opportunities

A company would be required to disclose its material risks and opportunities related to biodiversity and ecosystems. This could include physical risks, transition risks, and systemic risks, as well as opportunities for new products and services that contribute to biodiversity conservation.

Problem 23.1: ESRS E4 disclosure analysis

Choose a company that will be subject to the CSRD and analyze how it would need to adapt its current sustainability reporting to comply with ESRS E4. What are the key gaps in its current reporting?

Problem 23.2: Dependency assessment

For a company in the tourism sector, conduct a dependency assessment to identify its key dependencies on biodiversity and ecosystems. How could the degradation of these ecosystems affect the company's business model?

23.2 Conducting a Materiality Assessment under ESRS

ESRS requires a specific process for conducting a materiality assessment.

Theorem 23.2: The ESRS Materiality Assessment Process

Statement: The ESRS materiality assessment process involves the following steps: 1. **Understand the context:** Understand the company's business model, value chain, and stakeholders. 2. **Identify sustainability matters:** Identify a list of potential sustainability matters that could be material. 3. **Assess the materiality of the sustainability matters:** Assess the materiality of each sustainability matter from both an impact and a financial perspective. 4. **Determine the material sustainability matters to be reported:** Based on the assessment, determine the final list of material sustainability matters to be reported on.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let the materiality assessment process be represented as a function, f_{MA}, that takes the company's context (C) as input and returns a set of material sustainability matters (M_{SM}):

$$M_{SM} = f_{MA}(C)$$

The function can be decomposed into the following steps:

68. **Context Analysis** (C): Gather information on the company's business model, value chain, and stakeholders.

69. **Identification of Sustainability Matters** ($SM(C)$): Generate a list of potential sustainability matters, $SM = \{sm_1, sm_2, \ldots, sm_n\}$.

70. **Materiality Assessment** ($M(sm)$): For each sustainability matter $sm \in SM$, assess its materiality using the double materiality principle:

$$M(sm) = M_I(sm) \vee M_F(sm)$$

71. **Determination of Material Sustainability Matters** (M_{SM}): Select the sustainability matters that are material for reporting:

$$M_{SM} = \{sm \in SM \mid M(sm) = \text{True}\}$$

Proof of Process:

The ESRS materiality assessment process provides a structured and auditable framework for identifying a company's most important sustainability issues. The process is designed to be comprehensive, taking into account both the company's impacts on the world and the world's impacts on the company.

Q.E.D.

Example 23.4: Materiality assessment for a renewable energy company

A renewable energy company conducts a materiality assessment and identifies the following material sustainability matters: - **Impact materiality:** The impact of its wind turbines on bird and bat populations. - **Financial materiality:** The risk of stricter regulations on the siting of wind farms.

Problem 23.3: Materiality assessment application

Apply the ESRS materiality assessment process to a company in the chemical industry. What are the key biodiversity-related sustainability matters for this sector?

Problem 23.4: Stakeholder engagement in materiality assessment

Discuss the role of stakeholder engagement in the ESRS materiality assessment process. Who are the key stakeholders for a company when it comes to biodiversity? How can a company effectively engage with these stakeholders?

23.3 Supplementary Problems

72. Compare and contrast the disclosure requirements of ESRS E4 with the recommendations of the TNFD.
73. How does ESRS E4 relate to the EU Taxonomy for sustainable activities?
74. Discuss the challenges of implementing the ESRS, particularly for companies with complex global supply chains.
75. What is the role of assurance in ensuring the quality and reliability of sustainability reporting under the CSRD?
76. How can the ESRS contribute to the EU's goal of becoming a climate-neutral and nature-positive economy?

23.4 References

[1] EFRAG. (2023). *European Sustainability Reporting Standards (ESRS)*.

[2] European Commission. (2022). *Corporate Sustainability Reporting Directive (CSRD)*.

[3] European Commission. (2020). *EU Taxonomy for sustainable activities*.

[4] EFRAG. (2023). *Draft ESRS E4: Biodiversity and ecosystems*.

[5] Accountancy Europe. (2023). *CSRD: A new era for corporate reporting*.

Chapter 24: The SBTN Framework

The Science Based Targets Network (SBTN) is a collaboration of leading global non-profits and mission-driven organizations that are working to equip companies and cities with the guidance to set science-based targets for the whole of Earth's systems. This chapter focuses on the SBTN framework for setting science-based targets for nature.

24.1 The SBTN for Nature

The SBTN for Nature provides a framework for companies to set targets for reducing their impacts on nature, in line with what the science says is necessary to stay within Earth's limits.

Theorem 24.1: The AR3T Framework

Statement: The SBTN for Nature is based on the AR3T (Assess, Reduce, Restore, Regenerate, Transform) framework. This provides a mitigation hierarchy for companies to address their impacts on nature.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let the company's overall action on nature, A_{total}, be the sum of actions across the AR3T framework:

$$A_{total} = A_{assess} + A_{reduce} + A_{restore} + A_{regenerate} + A_{transform}$$

- **Assess** (A_{assess}): The initial step of understanding the company's impacts. This can be represented as an information-gathering function.
- **Reduce** (A_{reduce}): Actions to reduce negative impacts. This can be modeled as a function that minimizes the company's negative impact, $I_{\neg ¿¿}$:

$$\min ¿$$

- **Restore & Regenerate** ($A_{restore}, A_{regenerate}$): Actions to restore and regenerate ecosystems. These can be modeled as functions that maximize the positive impact on nature, I_{pos}:

$$\max\left(I_{pos}\right)$$

- **Transform** ($A_{transform}$): Actions to fundamentally change the business model. This can be represented as a change in the company's production function, f, to a new function, f', that has a lower impact on nature.

Proof of Hierarchy:

The AR3T framework provides a clear hierarchy of actions. A company must first assess its impacts, then prioritize the reduction of negative impacts, and then move on to restoration and regeneration. Transformation is the ultimate goal, as it involves a fundamental shift in the company's business model to one that is compatible with a nature-positive future.

Q.E.D.

Example 24.1: SBTN for a food company

A food company could use the SBTN for Nature to set targets for reducing its impacts on land use, water use, and biodiversity. For example, the company could set a target to eliminate deforestation from its supply chain by 2025. It could also set a target to restore a certain area of degraded land.

Example 24.2: SBTN for a water utility

A water utility could use the SBTN for Nature to set targets for reducing its water withdrawals and improving the quality of the water it returns to the environment. It could also set a target to restore a certain area of wetland habitat in its catchment area.

Problem 24.1: SBTN target setting

For a company in the apparel sector, set a science-based target for reducing its water use. You will need to research the water footprint of cotton production and the water stress in the regions where the company sources its cotton.

Problem 24.2: The role of restoration and regeneration

Discuss the role of restoration and regeneration in the SBTN for Nature. Why is it not enough for companies to simply reduce their negative impacts? ""

24.2 The Five Steps of the SBTN

The SBTN provides a five-step process for companies to set science-based targets for nature:

77. **Assess:** Assess the company's value chain to identify its key environmental impacts and dependencies.
78. **Interpret & Prioritize:** Interpret the results of the assessment and prioritize the company's most significant impacts.
79. **Measure, Set & Disclose:** Measure a baseline for the prioritized impacts, set targets, and disclose them publicly.
80. **Act:** Implement actions to achieve the targets.
81. **Track:** Track progress against the targets.

Theorem 24.2: Materiality and Prioritization

Statement: The SBTN emphasizes the importance of prioritizing the company's most significant impacts. This is based on the principle of materiality, which states that a company should focus its efforts on the issues that are most important to its business and its stakeholders.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let the SBTN process be represented as a sequence of functions:

82. **Assess** (**f_A**)**:** This function takes the company's value chain (VC) as input and produces a set of impacts and dependencies (ID):

$$ID = f_A(VC)$$

83. **Interpret & Prioritize** (**f_P**)**:** This function takes the impacts and dependencies and prioritizes them based on their significance (S), resulting in a set of material issues (M):

$$M = f_P(ID, S)$$

84. **Measure, Set & Disclose** (**f_{MSD}**)**:** This function takes the material issues and sets targets (T) based on a baseline measurement (B):

$$T = f_{MSD}(M, B)$$

85. **Act** (f_{Act}): This function involves implementing a set of actions (A) to achieve the targets:

$$A = f_{Act}(T)$$

86. **Track** (f_T): This function tracks the progress (P) against the targets over time:

$$P(t) = f_T(A, t)$$

The entire process can be represented as a feedback loop, where the results of the tracking step are used to inform the next round of assessment and target setting.

Proof of Process:

The five-step process provides a clear and logical framework for companies to set and achieve science-based targets for nature. The emphasis on prioritization ensures that companies focus their efforts on the issues where they can make the biggest difference. The feedback loop in the final step ensures that the process is dynamic and responsive to new information and changing circumstances.

Q.E.D.

Example 24.3: SBTN for a technology company

A technology company could use the five-step process to set a science-based target for reducing its greenhouse gas emissions. The company would first assess its emissions from its operations and supply chain. It would then prioritize the largest sources of emissions and set a target to reduce them in line with the Paris Agreement. The company would then implement actions to achieve the target, such as switching to renewable energy and improving energy efficiency. Finally, the company would track its progress against the target and report it publicly.

Problem 24.3: SBTN application

Apply the five-step process to a company in the transportation sector. What would be the key steps involved in setting a science-based target for nature for this company?

24.3 Supplementary Problems

87. Compare and contrast the SBTN for Nature with the Science Based Targets initiative (SBTi) for climate.
88. How can the SBTN for Nature be used to drive innovation and to create new business opportunities?
89. Discuss the challenges of setting and achieving science-based targets for nature. For example, how do you deal with the lack of data and the complexity of social-ecological systems?
90. What is the role of policy and regulation in supporting the uptake of science-based targets for nature?
91. How can the SBTN for Nature be used to engage with investors and other stakeholders on a company's nature-related performance?

24.4 References

[1] Science Based Targets Network (SBTN). (2020). *SBTN Initial Guidance for Business*.

[2] Science Based Targets initiative (SBTi). https://sciencebasedtargets.org/

[3] SBTN. (2023). *The SBTN for Nature: A guide for companies*.

[4] SBTN. (2023). *Technical Guidance for the SBTN for Nature*.

[5] Rockström, J., Steffen, W., Noone, K., Persson, Å., Chapin, F. S., Lambin, E. F., … & Foley, J. A. (2009). A safe operating space for humanity. *Nature*, 461(7263), 472-475.

Chapter 25: The ISO 14000 Series

The International Organization for Standardization (ISO) is an independent, non-governmental international organization that develops and publishes international standards. The ISO 14000 series is a family of standards that provides practical tools for companies and organizations of all kinds to manage their environmental responsibilities. This chapter focuses on the key standards in the ISO 14000 series that are relevant to biodiversity.

25.1 ISO 14001: Environmental Management Systems

ISO 14001 is the world's most widely used standard for environmental management systems (EMS). An EMS is a framework that helps an organization to achieve its environmental goals through a process of continual improvement.

Theorem 25.1: The Plan-Do-Check-Act (PDCA) Cycle

Statement: ISO 14001 is based on the Plan-Do-Check-Act (PDCA) cycle, a four-step management method used in business for the control and continual improvement of processes and products.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let the state of the environmental management system at time t be represented by a vector of performance indicators, S_t. The PDCA cycle can be modeled as a recursive function that updates the state of the system over time:

$$S_{t+1} = f_{PDCA}(S_t)$$

The function can be decomposed into the following steps:

92. **Plan (f_P):** Based on the current state S_t, establish objectives and processes necessary to deliver the desired results. This can be represented as a function that generates a plan, P_t:

$$P_t = f_P(S_t)$$

93. **Do** (f_D): Implement the plan. This can be represented as a function that takes the plan and produces a new state, S'_{t+1}:

$$S'_{t+1} = f_D(P_t)$$

94. **Check** (f_C): Monitor and measure the new state against the objectives and report the results. This can be represented as a function that evaluates the performance of the new state, E_{t+1}:

$$E_{t+1} = f_C(S'_{t+1})$$

95. **Act** (f_A): Take actions to continually improve performance. This can be represented as a function that takes the evaluation and produces a final, improved state, S_{t+1}:

$$S_{t+1} = f_A(E_{t+1})$$

Proof of Continual Improvement:

The PDCA cycle is a feedback loop that drives continual improvement. By repeatedly planning, doing, checking, and acting, an organization can systematically improve its environmental performance over time. The recursive nature of the function ensures that the learning from each cycle is incorporated into the next, leading to a spiral of improvement.

Q.E.D.

Example 25.1: ISO 14001 for a manufacturing company

A manufacturing company could use ISO 14001 to manage its environmental impacts, such as air and water pollution, waste generation, and energy consumption. The company would first develop an environmental policy and set objectives and targets for reducing its impacts. It would then implement a program of actions to achieve these targets, such as installing pollution control equipment and improving energy efficiency. The company would then monitor its performance and take corrective actions as needed.

Example 25.2: ISO 14001 and biodiversity

While ISO 14001 does not explicitly require a company to address biodiversity, it can be used as a framework for managing biodiversity impacts. For example, a company could include a commitment to biodiversity conservation in its environmental policy and set objectives and targets for reducing its impacts on biodiversity. The company could then implement a biodiversity action plan to achieve these targets.

Problem 25.1: ISO 14001 implementation

For a company in the construction sector, develop a plan for implementing an ISO 14001-certified environmental management system. The plan should include the key steps involved in the PDCA cycle.

Problem 25.2: Integrating biodiversity into an EMS

For the manufacturing company in Example 25.1, describe how it could integrate biodiversity into its existing ISO 14001-certified EMS. What are the key biodiversity-related aspects and impacts that the company should consider?

25.2 Other Relevant ISO 14000 Standards

In addition to ISO 14001, there are a number of other standards in the ISO 14000 series that are relevant to biodiversity.

- **ISO 14004:** Provides guidance on the establishment, implementation, maintenance, and improvement of an environmental management system.
- **ISO 14031:** Provides guidance on the evaluation of environmental performance.
- **ISO 14040/14044:** Provide a framework for conducting Life Cycle Assessments (LCAs).
- **ISO 14064/14065:** Provide a set of tools for programs to quantify, monitor, report and verify greenhouse gas emissions.

Theorem 25.2: Life Cycle Perspective

Statement: The ISO 14000 series emphasizes the importance of taking a life cycle perspective when managing environmental impacts. This means considering the environmental impacts of a product or service throughout its entire life cycle, from cradle to grave.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let the total environmental impact of a product, I_{total}, be the sum of the impacts at each stage of its life cycle:

$$I_{total} = \sum_{i=1}^{n} I_i$$

where I_i is the impact at stage i of the life cycle (e.g., raw material extraction, manufacturing, use, disposal).

The impact at each stage is a function of the inputs and outputs of that stage:

$$I_i = f\left(\text{Inputs}_i, \text{Outputs}_i\right)$$

An LCA involves quantifying the inputs and outputs at each stage of the life cycle and then assessing their potential environmental impacts.

Proof of Concept:

The life cycle perspective provides a more holistic view of the environmental impacts of a product or service. It helps to avoid problem-shifting, where a reduction in the environmental impact at one stage of the life cycle leads to an increase in the environmental impact at another stage. By considering the entire life cycle, a company can identify the key environmental hotspots and prioritize its efforts to reduce them.

Q.E.D.

Example 25.3: LCA for a product

A company could use ISO 14040/14044 to conduct an LCA of one of its products. The LCA would identify the key environmental hotspots in the product's life cycle and provide a basis for improving its environmental performance.

Problem 25.3: ISO standard selection

For a company that wants to develop a corporate biodiversity strategy, which ISO 14000 standards would be most relevant? Justify your choice.

25.3 Supplementary Problems

96. Compare and contrast ISO 14001 with other environmental management systems, such as the EU Eco-Management and Audit Scheme (EMAS).
97. How can ISO 14001 certification help a company to improve its environmental performance and to gain a competitive advantage?
98. Discuss the role of third-party certification in ensuring the credibility of ISO 14001.
99. How can the ISO 14000 series be used to support the implementation of other biodiversity-related frameworks, such as the TNFD and the SBTN?
100. What are the limitations of the ISO 14000 series for addressing biodiversity loss?

25.4 References

[1] International Organization for Standardization (ISO). (2015). *ISO 14001:2015 Environmental management systems —— Requirements with guidance for use*.

[2] ISO. (2016). *ISO 14004:2016 Environmental management systems —— General guidelines on implementation*.

[3] ISO. (2013). *ISO 14031:2013 Environmental management —— Environmental performance evaluation —— Guidelines*.

[4] ISO. (2006). *ISO 14040:2006 Environmental management —— Life cycle assessment —— Principles and framework*.

[5] European Commission. (2009). *Regulation (EC) No 1221/2009 of the European Parliament and of the Council of 25 November 2009 on the voluntary participation by organisations in a Community eco-management and audit scheme (EMAS)*.

PART VIII: ADVANCED TOPICS AND APPLICATIONS

Chapter 26: Biodiversity-Related Derivatives

Financial derivatives are contracts whose value is derived from an underlying asset. While traditionally linked to financial assets like stocks and bonds, there is growing interest in developing derivatives linked to biodiversity and ecosystem services. This chapter explores the concept of biodiversity-related derivatives and their potential applications.

26.1 Concept of Biodiversity Derivatives

Biodiversity-related derivatives are financial instruments whose value is linked to a measurable biodiversity outcome, such as the population of a species, the condition of an ecosystem, or the flow of an ecosystem service.

Theorem 26.1: Hedging and Speculation

Statement: Derivatives can be used for two main purposes: hedging (to reduce risk) and speculation (to bet on the future value of an asset).

Mathematical Formulation:

Let V be the value of a portfolio exposed to a nature-related risk. The change in the value of the portfolio, ΔV, is a function of the change in the value of the underlying biodiversity asset, ΔB:

$$\Delta V = f(\Delta B)$$

- **Hedging:** A hedger can use a derivative to reduce the volatility of their portfolio. Let D be the value of a derivative whose payoff is negatively correlated with the value of the biodiversity asset. The change in the value of the hedged portfolio, ΔV_H, is:

  $$\Delta V_H = \Delta V + \Delta D$$

  If the derivative is a perfect hedge, then $\Delta V_H = 0$.

- **Speculation:** A speculator can use a derivative to bet on the future value of the biodiversity asset. Let S be the value of a speculative position. The change in the value of the speculative position, ΔS, is:

$$\Delta S = g(\Delta B)$$

  where g is a function that represents the speculator's bet.

Proof of Concept:

The mathematical formulation shows how derivatives can be used to modify the risk profile of a portfolio. A hedger uses a derivative to reduce risk, while a speculator uses a derivative to take on risk in the hope of making a profit. Both roles are essential for a functioning market.

Q.E.D.

Example 26.1: A Species Population Index Future

A futures contract could be created based on an index of the population of a threatened species. A company that has invested in a conservation project to protect the species could sell a futures contract to lock in a price for the conservation outcome. An investor who believes that the conservation project will be successful could buy the futures contract, hoping to profit from an increase in the population index.

Example 26.2: A Weather Derivative for a Farmer

A farmer whose crops are vulnerable to drought could buy a weather derivative that pays out if rainfall is below a certain level. This would help the farmer to hedge the financial risk of a drought.

Problem 26.1: Derivative design

Design a biodiversity-related derivative to hedge the risk of a coral bleaching event for a tourism operator in a coral reef area.

Problem 26.2: Basis risk

Basis risk is the risk that the price of a derivative does not move in line with the price of the underlying asset. For the species population index future in Example 26.1, what are the potential sources of basis risk? ""

26.2 Potential Applications

Biodiversity-related derivatives have a wide range of potential applications, including:

- **Conservation finance:** To create new sources of funding for conservation.
- **Risk management:** To help companies and financial institutions to manage nature-related risks.
- **Incentivizing conservation:** To create financial incentives for companies and individuals to conserve biodiversity.

Theorem 26.2: Market Creation and Price Discovery

Statement: By creating a market for biodiversity outcomes, derivatives can help to reveal the economic value of biodiversity and to facilitate more efficient allocation of resources for conservation.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let the demand for a biodiversity outcome be represented by the function $Q_D(P)$ and the supply be represented by the function $Q_S(P)$, where P is the price of the outcome.

In a competitive market, the equilibrium price, $P^{¿}$, is determined by the intersection of the demand and supply curves:

$$Q_D(P^{¿})=Q_S(P^{¿})$$

The equilibrium price, $P^{¿}$, reflects the marginal value that society places on the biodiversity outcome. This price signal can then be used to guide investment decisions.

Proof of Concept:

The creation of a market allows for the forces of supply and demand to interact and to determine a price for the biodiversity outcome. This price discovery process is essential for efficient resource allocation. Without a market, the value of biodiversity is often not reflected in economic decisions, leading to a market failure.

Q.E.D.

Example 26.3: A Forest Conservation Bond with a Biodiversity Kicker

A forest conservation bond could be issued to finance the protection of a forest. The bond could include a "biodiversity kicker" that pays a higher return to investors if certain biodiversity targets are met, such as an increase in the population of a key species.

Problem 26.3: Green bond analysis

Research a real-world example of a green bond that has been used to finance a biodiversity conservation project. How does the bond work? What are the key performance indicators that are used to measure the project's success?

26.3 Challenges and Risks

While biodiversity-related derivatives have the potential to be a powerful tool for conservation, there are also a number of challenges and risks that need to be addressed.

- **Measurement and verification:** It can be difficult to measure and verify biodiversity outcomes, which can make it difficult to design and enforce derivative contracts.
- **Liquidity:** The market for biodiversity-related derivatives is still very small, which can make it difficult to buy and sell these instruments.
- **Moral hazard:** The availability of derivatives could create a moral hazard, where companies are less likely to take action to reduce their biodiversity impacts because they can hedge the risk.
- **Ethical concerns:** There are ethical concerns about putting a price on nature and creating a market for biodiversity.

Theorem 26.3: The Lemons Problem

Statement: The “lemons problem” is a term used in economics to describe a market where the seller has more information about the quality of a product than the buyer. This can lead to a market failure, where only low-quality products are traded.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let there be two types of conservation projects: high-quality (H) and low-quality (L). The seller knows the quality of the project, but the buyer does not. The buyer only knows the average quality of the projects in the market, Q_{avg}.

The buyer is willing to pay a price, $P(Q_{avg})$, that reflects the average quality. The seller of a high-quality project is only willing to sell if the price is greater than or equal to their reservation price, P_H. The seller of a low-quality project is willing to sell if the price is greater than or equal to their reservation price, P_L, where $P_H > P_L$.

If $P(Q_{avg}) < P_H$, then the sellers of high-quality projects will not enter the market. This will reduce the average quality of the projects in the market, which will in turn reduce the price that buyers are willing to pay. This can lead to a downward spiral, where only low-quality projects are traded.

Proof of Market Failure:

The asymmetric information between buyers and sellers creates an adverse selection problem. The buyers cannot distinguish between high-quality and low-quality projects, so they are only willing to pay a price for the average quality. This drives the high-quality projects out of the market, leaving only the “lemons.” This is a classic example of a market failure.

Q.E.D.

Example 26.4: The risk of greenwashing

There is a risk that companies could use biodiversity-related derivatives for “greenwashing,” which is the practice of making misleading claims about the environmental benefits of a product or company.

Problem 26.4: Addressing the challenges

For each of the challenges and risks listed above, suggest one or more potential solutions.

26.4 Supplementary Problems

101. Discuss the role of government in regulating the market for biodiversity-related derivatives.
102. How can technology, such as remote sensing and DNA sequencing, be used to improve the measurement and verification of biodiversity outcomes?
103. Compare and contrast biodiversity-related derivatives with other forms of conservation finance, such as payments for ecosystem services (PES) and biodiversity offsets.
104. What is the potential for biodiversity-related derivatives to be used in developing countries?
105. Discuss the potential for a "catastrophe bond" for biodiversity, which would pay out in the event of a major biodiversity loss event, such as the collapse of a major fishery.

26.5 References

[1] Hahn, T., & Stavins, R. N. (2011). The effect of climate change on the trading of weather derivatives. *American Economic Review*, 101(3), 195-99.

[2] World Bank. (2021). *The Green Bond Market: A practitioner's guide*.

[3] Akerlof, G. A. (1970). The market for" lemons": Quality uncertainty and the market mechanism. *The quarterly journal of economics*, 84(3), 488-500.

[4] Salzman, J. (2005). Creating markets for ecosystem services: notes from the field. *N. YUL Rev.*, 80, 870.

[5] Goulder, L. H., & Parry, I. W. (2008). Instrument choice in environmental policy. *Review of environmental economics and policy*, 2(2), 152-174.

Chapter 27: Real Options Analysis for Conservation

Real options analysis is a valuation technique that applies the principles of financial options theory to real assets, such as infrastructure projects or conservation investments. It is a powerful tool for making decisions under uncertainty, and it is particularly well-suited to the challenges of biodiversity conservation. This chapter introduces the concept of real options analysis and its application to conservation.

27.1 Real Options Theory

A real option is the right, but not the obligation, to take a particular action at a future date. For example, the owner of a piece of land has the real option to develop the land, to sell it, or to conserve it.

Theorem 27.1: The Black-Scholes Model

Statement: The Black-Scholes model is a mathematical model for pricing financial options. It can be adapted to value real options.

Mathematical Formulation:

The value of a European call option, C, is given by the Black-Scholes formula:

$$C(S,t)=N(d_1)S-N(d_2)Ke^{-r(T-t)}$$

where:

- $d_1=\dfrac{\ln\left(\dfrac{S}{K}\right)+\left(r+\dfrac{\sigma^2}{2}\right)(T-t)}{\sigma\sqrt{T-t}}$
- $d_2=d_1-\sigma\sqrt{T-t}$
- $N(\cdot)$ is the cumulative distribution function of the standard normal distribution.
- S is the price of the underlying asset.
- K is the exercise price.

- r is the risk-free interest rate.
- σ is the volatility of the underlying asset.
- $T-t$ is the time to expiration.

Proof of Concept:

The Black-Scholes formula is derived by constructing a risk-free portfolio consisting of the option and the underlying asset. The value of this portfolio must grow at the risk-free rate, which leads to a partial differential equation. The Black-Scholes formula is the solution to this equation.

Q.E.D.

Example 27.1: The option to delay a project

A company that is considering a new investment project has the option to delay the project. This option has value because it allows the company to wait for more information before making a decision. For example, the company could wait to see if the market for its product improves or if the cost of the project decreases.

Example 27.2: The option to abandon a project

A company that has already invested in a project has the option to abandon the project if it turns out to be unprofitable. This option has value because it limits the company's downside risk.

Problem 27.1: Real option valuation

For the dam project in Problem 16.1, value the option to delay the project for one year. You will need to make some assumptions about the volatility of the electricity price and the risk-free interest rate.

Problem 27.2: Types of real options

Identify and describe three different types of real options that might be relevant to a conservation project.

27.2 Application to Conservation

Real options analysis can be used to value a wide range of conservation investments, from the creation of a protected area to the restoration of a degraded ecosystem.

Theorem 27.2: The Value of Flexibility

Statement: Real options analysis recognizes that flexibility has value. In the context of conservation, this means that it is often better to keep our options open and to avoid making irreversible decisions.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let the value of a conservation investment be V. A traditional NPV analysis would calculate the value of the investment as the present value of the expected future cash flows. A real options analysis would add the value of any real options associated with the investment, such as the option to delay, expand, or abandon the project.

$$V_{ROA} = V_{NPV} + V_{option}$$

where V_{ROA} is the value of the investment using real options analysis, V_{NPV} is the value using traditional NPV analysis, and V_{option} is the value of the real option.

The value of the option is always non-negative, so $V_{ROA} \geq V_{NPV}$. This means that a real options analysis will always give a higher value for a conservation investment than a traditional NPV analysis, as long as there is some flexibility associated with the investment.

Proof of Concept:

The value of flexibility comes from the ability to adapt to new information. In an uncertain world, it is valuable to have the option to change our course of action as we learn more. A real options analysis explicitly captures this value, which is why it is a more appropriate tool for valuing conservation investments than a traditional NPV analysis.

Q.E.D.

Example 27.3: The value of conserving a forest

The value of conserving a forest is not just the value of the timber and other ecosystem services that it provides today. It is also the value of the option to use the forest for other purposes in the future, such as ecotourism or bioprospecting. A real options analysis would capture this option value, which would likely be missed by a traditional NPV analysis.

Example 27.4: The value of a seed bank

A seed bank is a type of real option. It preserves the genetic diversity of plants, which gives us the option to use this diversity in the future to develop new crops that are resistant to pests and diseases.

Problem 27.3: Valuing a protected area

Use a real options approach to value a new protected area. The protected area has the potential to generate revenue from ecotourism, but there is uncertainty about the future demand for ecotourism. The government also has the option to allow mining in the protected area in the future.

Problem 27.4: Irreversibility and conservation

Discuss the concept of irreversibility in the context of conservation. Why is it important to avoid irreversible decisions when it comes to the environment?

27.3 Supplementary Problems

106. Compare and contrast real options analysis with traditional NPV analysis. What are the key advantages of real options analysis?
107. How can real options analysis be used to design more effective conservation policies?
108. Discuss the challenges of applying real options analysis to conservation. For example, how do you estimate the volatility of biodiversity?
109. What is the role of adaptive management in a real options framework?
110. How can real options analysis be used to value the conservation of endangered species?

27.4 References

[1] Dixit, A. K., & Pindyck, R. S. (1994). *Investment under uncertainty*. Princeton university press.

[2] Black, F., & Scholes, M. (1973). The pricing of options and corporate liabilities. *Journal of political economy*, 81(3), 637-654.

[3] Arrow, K. J., & Fisher, A. C. (1974). Environmental preservation, uncertainty, and irreversibility. *The quarterly journal of economics*, 88(2), 312-319.

[4] Polasky, S., Costello, C., & Solow, A. (2005). The value of nearly-optimal management of environmental resources. *Journal of Environmental Economics and Management*, 50(2), 235-248.

[5] Leslie, H. M., & McLeod, K. L. (2007). Confronting the challenges of implementing ecosystem-based management. *Frontiers in Ecology and the Environment*, 5(9), 497-504.

Chapter 28: Linear and Non-Linear Programming for Conservation

Optimization is a powerful tool for making decisions about how to allocate scarce resources. This chapter introduces the use of linear and non-linear programming for solving conservation problems, such as how to design a protected area network or how to allocate funding for conservation projects.

28.1 Linear Programming

Linear programming is a mathematical technique for optimizing a linear objective function, subject to a set of linear constraints.

Theorem 28.1: The Simplex Method

Statement: The simplex method is an algorithm for solving linear programming problems. It works by moving from one vertex of the feasible region to another, improving the value of the objective function at each step, until the optimal solution is reached.

Mathematical Formulation:

A linear programming problem can be written in the following standard form:

Maximize:

$$Z = c^T x$$

Subject to:

$$Ax \leq b$$

$$x \geq 0$$

where c is a vector of coefficients for the objective function, x is a vector of decision variables, A is a matrix of coefficients for the constraints, and b is a vector of constants.

The simplex method starts at a feasible vertex and iteratively moves to an adjacent vertex with a higher objective function value. The algorithm terminates when it reaches a vertex where no adjacent vertex has a higher objective function value. This vertex is the optimal solution.

Proof of Convergence:

The number of vertices of the feasible region is finite. At each step of the simplex method, the value of the objective function increases. Therefore, the algorithm cannot visit the same vertex twice, and it must terminate in a finite number of steps.

Q.E.D.

Example 28.1: The reserve selection problem

The reserve selection problem is the problem of selecting a set of sites for a protected area network that will maximize the number of species protected, subject to a budget constraint. This problem can be formulated as a linear programming problem.

Example 28.2: The optimal harvesting problem

The optimal harvesting problem is the problem of determining the optimal harvesting rate for a renewable resource, such as a fishery or a forest. The goal is to maximize the long-term yield from the resource, without depleting it. This problem can also be formulated as a linear programming problem.

Problem 28.1: Reserve selection formulation

Formulate the reserve selection problem as a linear programming problem. Define the objective function, the decision variables, and the constraints.

Problem 28.2: Optimal harvesting calculation

For a simple fishery model, use linear programming to calculate the maximum sustainable yield. You will need to make some assumptions about the growth rate of the fish population and the cost of fishing.

28.2 Non-Linear Programming

Non-linear programming is a more general form of optimization that allows for non-linear objective functions and constraints. This is often more realistic for conservation problems, where the relationships between variables are often non-linear.

Theorem 28.2: Karush-Kuhn-Tucker (KKT) Conditions

Statement: The KKT conditions are a set of necessary conditions for a solution to a non-linear programming problem to be optimal. They are a generalization of the Lagrange multiplier method.

Mathematical Formulation:

Consider the following non-linear programming problem:

Minimize:

$$f(x)$$

Subject to:

$$g_i(x) \leq 0, i=1,\ldots,m$$

$$h_j(x) = 0, j=1,\ldots,l$$

Let $x^{¿}$ be an optimal solution. If certain regularity conditions are satisfied, then there exist vectors of Lagrange multipliers, $\mu^{¿}$ and $\lambda^{¿}$, such that the following KKT conditions are satisfied:

111. **Stationarity:**

$$\nabla f(x^{¿}) + \sum_{i=1}^{m} \mu_i^{¿} \nabla g_i(x^{¿}) + \sum_{j=1}^{l} \lambda_j^{¿} \nabla h_j(x^{¿}) = 0$$

112. **Primal feasibility:**

$$g_i(x^{¿}) \leq 0, i=1,\ldots,m$$

$$h_j(x^{¿}) = 0, j=1,\ldots,l$$

113. **Dual feasibility:**

$$\mu_i^{¿} \geq 0, i=1, \dots, m$$

114. **Complementary slackness:**

$$\mu_i^{¿} g_i(x^{¿}) = 0, i=1, \dots, m$$

Proof of Necessity:

The proof of the KKT conditions is based on the concept of a feasible direction. At an optimal solution, there can be no feasible direction in which the objective function decreases. This condition can be used to derive the KKT conditions.

Q.E.D.

Example 28.3: The optimal control of an invasive species

The optimal control of an invasive species is the problem of determining the optimal level of effort to put into controlling the species over time. The goal is to minimize the total cost of control and the damage caused by the species. This problem can be formulated as a non-linear programming problem, because the growth of the invasive species and the damage it causes are often non-linear.

Problem 28.3: Non-linear programming formulation

Formulate the optimal control of an invasive species as a non-linear programming problem. Define the objective function, the decision variables, and the constraints.

28.3 Supplementary Problems

115. Compare and contrast linear and non-linear programming. What are the advantages and disadvantages of each?
116. How can integer programming be used to solve conservation problems where the decision variables must be integers (e.g., the number of rangers to hire)?
117. Discuss the challenges of applying optimization methods to conservation. For example, how do you deal with uncertainty and multiple objectives?
118. What is the role of dynamic programming in solving sequential decision-making problems in conservation?

119. How can optimization methods be used to design payments for ecosystem services (PES) schemes?

28.4 References

[1] Hillier, F. S., & Lieberman, G. J. (2010). *Introduction to operations research*. McGraw-Hill Science/Engineering/Math.

[2] Williams, H. P. (2013). *Model building in mathematical programming*. John Wiley & Sons.

[3] Possingham, H. P., Ball, I. R., & Andelman, S. (2000). Mathematical methods for identifying representative reserve networks. *Quantitative methods for conservation biology*, 291-306.

[4] Clark, C. W. (1990). *Mathematical bioeconomics: the optimal management of renewable resources*. John Wiley & Sons.

[5] Costello, C., & Polasky, S. (2004). Dynamic reserve site selection. *Resource and Energy Economics*, 26(2), 157-174.

Chapter 29: Multi-Objective Optimization for Biodiversity

Conservation problems often involve multiple, conflicting objectives. For example, we may want to maximize the number of species protected, while at the same time minimizing the cost of conservation. Multi-objective optimization is a set of techniques for solving problems with multiple objectives. This chapter introduces the use of multi-objective optimization in biodiversity conservation.

29.1 Pareto Optimality

In a multi-objective optimization problem, there is typically no single solution that is optimal for all objectives. Instead, there is a set of solutions that are known as Pareto optimal. A solution is Pareto optimal if it is not possible to improve one objective without making at least one other objective worse off.

Theorem 29.1: The Pareto Frontier

Statement: The set of all Pareto optimal solutions is known as the Pareto frontier. The Pareto frontier represents the trade-off between the different objectives.

Mathematical Formulation:

Consider a multi-objective optimization problem with k objectives:

Maximize:

$$F(x)=(f_1(x), f_2(x), \ldots, f_k(x))$$

Subject to:

$$x \in X$$

where x is a vector of decision variables and X is the feasible set.

A solution $x^{¿} \in X$ is Pareto optimal if there is no other solution $x \in X$ such that $f_i(x) \geq f_i(x^{¿})$ for all $i=1,\ldots,k$, and $f_j(x) > f_j(x^{¿})$ for at least one j.

The Pareto frontier is the set of all Pareto optimal solutions.

Proof of Concept:

The Pareto frontier is a useful tool for visualizing the trade-off between different objectives. By plotting the Pareto frontier, we can see how much of one objective we have to give up to get more of another objective. This can help us to make a more informed decision about which solution to choose.

Q.E.D.

Example 29.1: The trade-off between conservation and cost

In the reserve selection problem, there is a trade-off between the number of species protected and the cost of the protected area network. The Pareto frontier would show the maximum number of species that can be protected for a given budget. Decision-makers could then choose a point on the Pareto frontier that represents their preferred balance between conservation and cost.

Example 29.2: The trade-off between different ecosystem services

In a land-use planning problem, there may be a trade-off between different ecosystem services. For example, a land-use plan that maximizes timber production may not be the same as a land-use plan that maximizes carbon sequestration. The Pareto frontier would show the trade-off between these two objectives, and decision-makers could choose a land-use plan that represents their preferred balance between the two services.

Problem 29.1: Pareto frontier construction

For a simple reserve selection problem with two objectives (e.g., protecting two different species), construct the Pareto frontier. You will need to make some assumptions about the cost of protecting each site and the distribution of the two species.

Problem 29.2: Interpreting a Pareto frontier

For the land-use planning problem in Example 29.2, interpret the shape of the Pareto frontier. What does it tell you about the trade-off between timber production and carbon sequestration?

29.2 Goal Programming

Goal programming is a technique for solving multi-objective optimization problems where the decision-maker has a specific goal for each objective. The goal is to find a solution that comes as close as possible to achieving all the goals simultaneously.

Theorem 29.2: The Weighted Sum Method

Statement: One way to solve a multi-objective optimization problem is to convert it into a single-objective problem by assigning a weight to each objective. The goal is then to maximize the weighted sum of the objectives.

Mathematical Formulation:

Consider a multi-objective optimization problem with k objectives:

Maximize:

$$F(x) = (f_1(x), f_2(x), \ldots, f_k(x))$$

Subject to:

$$x \in X$$

The weighted sum method converts this into a single-objective problem:

Maximize:

$$W(x) = \sum_{i=1}^{k} w_i f_i(x)$$

Subject to:

$$x \in X$$

where w_i is the weight assigned to objective i. The weights must be non-negative and sum to one:

$$\sum_{i=1}^{k} w_i = 1, w_i \geq 0$$

Proof of Pareto Optimality:

If all the weights are positive ($w_i > 0$), then the solution to the weighted sum problem is a Pareto optimal solution to the original multi-objective problem. This is because any improvement in one objective would have to come at the expense of another objective, which would reduce the value of the weighted sum.

Q.E.D.

Example 29.3: Goal programming for conservation planning

In a conservation planning problem, the decision-maker may have goals for the number of species to be protected, the area of habitat to be conserved, and the cost of the conservation plan. Goal programming could be used to find a plan that comes as close as possible to achieving all these goals.

Problem 29.3: Goal programming formulation

Formulate the conservation planning problem in Example 29.3 as a goal programming problem. Define the objective function, the decision variables, and the constraints.

29.3 Supplementary Problems

120. Compare and contrast multi-objective optimization with single-objective optimization. What are the advantages of multi-objective optimization?
121. How can multi-objective optimization be used to engage with stakeholders and to facilitate a more transparent and participatory decision-making process?
122. Discuss the challenges of applying multi-objective optimization to conservation. For example, how do you deal with uncertainty and the difficulty of quantifying some objectives?
123. What is the role of visualization in communicating the results of a multi-objective optimization analysis?
124. How can multi-objective optimization be used to design policies that are both effective and equitable?

29.4 References

[1] Ehrgott, M. (2005). *Multicriteria optimization*. Springer Science & Business Media.

[2] Miettinen, K. (1999). *Nonlinear multiobjective optimization*. Springer Science & Business Media.

[3] Polasky, S., Nelson, E., Pennington, D., & Johnson, K. A. (2011). The impact of land-use change on ecosystem services, biodiversity and returns to landowners: a case study in the state of Minnesota. *Environmental and Resource Economics*, 48(2), 219-242.

[4] Lester, S. E., Costello, C., Halpern, B. S., & Gaines, S. D. (2013). The conservation value of spatial management in the face of climate change. *Ecology letters*, 16(8), 1023-1031.

[5] White, C., Halpern, B. S., & Kappel, C. V. (2012). Ecosystem service tradeoff analysis reveals the value of marine spatial planning for multiple ocean uses. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences*, 109(12), 4696-4701.

Chapter 30: Game Theory and Conservation Conflicts

Conservation is often a game, with different players who have different interests and strategies. Game theory is a mathematical tool for analyzing strategic interactions between rational decision-makers. This chapter introduces the use of game theory for understanding and resolving conservation conflicts.

30.1 Key Concepts in Game Theory

- **Players:** The decision-makers in the game.
- **Strategies:** The possible actions that each player can take.
- **Payoffs:** The outcome of the game for each player, for each possible combination of strategies.
- **Nash equilibrium:** A set of strategies, one for each player, such that no player has an incentive to unilaterally change their strategy.

Theorem 30.1: The Prisoner's Dilemma

Statement: The Prisoner's Dilemma is a classic game that illustrates the conflict between individual and collective rationality. In the Prisoner's Dilemma, two players would be better off if they cooperated, but each player has an incentive to defect, which leads to a suboptimal outcome for both.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let the two players be Player 1 and Player 2. Each player has two strategies: Cooperate (C) or Defect (D). The payoffs for the game are given by the following matrix:

	Player 2: C	Player 2: D
Player 1: C	(R, R)	(S, T)
Player 1: D	(T, S)	(P, P)

where:

- $T > R > P > S$
- $2R > T + S$
- T is the temptation to defect.
- R is the reward for mutual cooperation.
- P is the punishment for mutual defection.
- S is the sucker's payoff.

The Nash equilibrium of the game is (D, D), even though the Pareto optimal outcome is (C, C).

Proof of Nash Equilibrium:

- If Player 2 cooperates, Player 1 is better off defecting ($T > R$).

- If Player 2 defects, Player 1 is better off defecting (P > S).

Therefore, regardless of what Player 2 does, Player 1's best strategy is to defect. The same logic applies to Player 2. Thus, (D, D) is the unique Nash equilibrium.

Q.E.D.

Example 30.1: The tragedy of the commons

The tragedy of the commons is a classic example of the Prisoner's Dilemma in an environmental context. It describes a situation where a shared resource, such as a fishery or a pasture, is overused because each individual has an incentive to take as much as they can, without considering the impact on the resource or on other users.

Example 30.2: A conservation auction

A conservation auction is a game where different landholders bid for a contract to conserve their land. The goal of the auction is to select the set of landholders that can provide the most conservation for the lowest cost.

Problem 30.1: The Prisoner's Dilemma in conservation

Describe a real-world conservation problem that can be modeled as a Prisoner's Dilemma. What are the players, strategies, and payoffs? What is the Nash equilibrium? How could the outcome of the game be improved?

Problem 30.2: Designing a conservation auction

Design a conservation auction to encourage farmers to adopt more biodiversity-friendly farming practices. What are the key design features of the auction? How would you ensure that the auction is efficient and equitable? ""

30.2 Application to Conservation Conflicts

Game theory can be used to analyze a wide range of conservation conflicts, from human-wildlife conflict to international environmental agreements.

Theorem 30.2: The Coase Theorem

Statement: The Coase Theorem states that if property rights are well-defined and there are no transaction costs, then private bargaining will lead to an efficient allocation of resources, regardless of the initial allocation of property rights.

Mathematical Formulation:

Let there be two parties, A and B, who are affected by an externality. For example, A is a factory that pollutes a river, and B is a fishery that is harmed by the pollution. Let q be the level of pollution. The profit of the factory is $\pi_A(q)$, and the profit of the fishery is $\pi_B(q)$. The socially optimal level of pollution, $q^{¿}$, is the level that maximizes the total profit:

$$\max_q \pi_A(q)+\pi_B(q)$$

The Coase Theorem states that if property rights are well-defined and there are no transaction costs, then the two parties will bargain to reach the socially optimal level of pollution, $q^{¿}$.

- **Case 1: The fishery has the right to clean water.** The factory must pay the fishery for the right to pollute. The factory will pollute up to the point where its marginal profit from polluting is equal to the marginal damage to the fishery.

- **Case 2: The factory has the right to pollute.** The fishery must pay the factory to reduce its pollution. The fishery will pay the factory to reduce its pollution up to the point where the marginal cost of reducing pollution is equal to the marginal benefit to the fishery.

In both cases, the final level of pollution will be the same, $q^{¿}$.

Proof of Efficiency:

The Coase Theorem is a direct consequence of the assumption of no transaction costs. If there are no transaction costs, then the two parties can bargain to reach a mutually beneficial agreement. The agreement will be efficient because it will maximize the total surplus from the activity. The initial allocation of property rights only affects the distribution of the surplus, not the efficiency of the outcome.

Q.E.D.

Example 30.3: Human-wildlife conflict

Human-wildlife conflict can be modeled as a game between humans and wildlife. For example, a farmer may have to decide whether to invest in measures to protect their crops from elephants, while the elephants have to decide whether to raid the farmer's crops. Game theory can be used to identify strategies that can reduce the conflict and promote coexistence.

Problem 30.3: Modeling human-wildlife conflict

Model the conflict between a farmer and a population of crop-raiding monkeys as a game. What are the players, strategies, and payoffs? What is the Nash equilibrium? How could the outcome of the game be improved?

30.3 Supplementary Problems

125. Compare and contrast cooperative and non-cooperative game theory. When would you use each?
126. How can game theory be used to design more effective international environmental agreements?
127. Discuss the limitations of game theory for analyzing conservation problems. For example, does it adequately capture the complexity of human behavior and the role of social norms?
128. What is the role of evolutionary game theory in understanding the evolution of cooperation in nature?
129. How can game theory be used to analyze the conflict between short-term economic interests and long-term environmental sustainability?

30.4 References

[1] Myerson, R. B. (1991). *Game theory: Analysis of conflict*. Harvard university press.

[2] Fudenberg, D., & Tirole, J. (1991). *Game theory*. MIT press.

[3] Hardin, G. (1968). The tragedy of the commons. *Science*, 162(3859), 1243-1248.

[4] Coase, R. H. (1960). The problem of social cost. *The journal of Law and Economics*, 3, 1-44.

[5] Nowak, M. A. (2006). *Evolutionary dynamics: exploring the equations of life*. Harvard University Press.

Chapter 31: AI and Machine Learning in Biodiversity Accounting

Artificial intelligence (AI) and machine learning (ML) are rapidly transforming the field of biodiversity conservation. These technologies can be used to collect and analyze large datasets, to automate repetitive tasks, and to make more accurate predictions about the future of biodiversity. This chapter explores the use of AI and ML in biodiversity accounting.

31.1 AI for Species Identification

AI can be used to automatically identify species from images, videos, and audio recordings. This can be a huge time-saver for ecologists and citizen scientists, and it can also improve the accuracy of species identification.

Theorem 31.1: Convolutional Neural Networks (CNNs)

Statement: CNNs are a type of deep learning model that are particularly well-suited to image recognition tasks.

Mathematical Formulation:

A CNN consists of a series of layers, including convolutional layers, pooling layers, and fully connected layers.

- **Convolutional layers:** These layers apply a set of filters to the input image. Each filter is a small matrix of weights that is convolved with the input image to produce a feature map. The feature map highlights the presence of a particular feature in the input image.
- **Pooling layers:** These layers downsample the feature maps, which reduces the computational complexity of the model and makes it more robust to small changes in the input image.

- **Fully connected layers:** These layers are the same as the layers in a traditional neural network. They are used to learn a non-linear mapping from the feature maps to the output classes.

The output of a CNN is a vector of probabilities, where each probability represents the likelihood that the input image belongs to a particular class.

Proof of Concept:

The hierarchical structure of a CNN allows it to learn a representation of the input image at multiple levels of abstraction. The early layers learn to detect simple features, such as edges and corners, while the later layers learn to detect more complex features, such as objects and scenes. This is what makes CNNs so effective for image recognition tasks.

Q.E.D.

Example 31.1: iNaturalist

iNaturalist is a citizen science project that uses AI to help people identify the plants and animals they see. Users can upload a photo of an organism, and the iNaturalist app will suggest a possible identification. The identification is then confirmed by other users in the iNaturalist community.

Example 31.2: Elephant Listening Project

The Elephant Listening Project uses AI to monitor the populations of forest elephants in Central Africa. The project has deployed a network of acoustic sensors in the forest, and it uses AI to automatically detect the calls of elephants in the audio recordings. This information is then used to estimate the size and distribution of the elephant population.

Problem 31.1: Build a species identification model

Using a publicly available dataset of images, build a simple CNN model to identify a small number of species. You can use a platform like TensorFlow or PyTorch to build your model.

Problem 31.2: The ethics of AI for species identification

Discuss the ethical implications of using AI for species identification. For example, what are the risks of misidentification? How can we ensure that the benefits of this technology are shared equitably?

31.2 AI for Habitat Mapping

AI can be used to automatically map habitats from satellite imagery and other remote sensing data. This can be a valuable tool for monitoring land use change and for identifying areas that are important for conservation.

Theorem 31.2: Random Forests

Statement: Random forests are a type of machine learning model that can be used for classification and regression tasks.

Mathematical Formulation:

A random forest is an ensemble of decision trees. Let $h_1(x), h_2(x), \ldots, h_k(x)$ be a set of k decision trees. The output of the random forest for a classification problem is the majority vote of the individual trees:

$$H(x) = \text{majority vote}\{h_1(x), h_2(x), \ldots, h_k(x)\}$$

For a regression problem, the output is the average of the individual trees:

$$H(x) = \frac{1}{k} \sum_{i=1}^{k} h_i(x)$$

Each tree in the random forest is trained on a random subset of the data and a random subset of the features. This process of randomization helps to reduce the correlation between the trees and to improve the accuracy of the model.

Proof of Concept:

The random forest algorithm is an example of bootstrap aggregating, or bagging. The idea behind bagging is to reduce the variance of a model by averaging the predictions of a large number of models. The randomization in the random forest algorithm further reduces the variance of the model and makes it less prone to overfitting.

Q.E.D.

Example 31.3: Global Forest Watch

Global Forest Watch is a platform that uses satellite imagery and AI to monitor the world's forests in near real-time. The platform provides data on deforestation, forest fires, and other threats to forests. This information can be used by governments, companies, and civil society organizations to take action to protect forests.

Problem 31.3: Habitat mapping with remote sensing data

Using a publicly available dataset of satellite imagery, build a simple random forest model to map the distribution of different land cover types in a small area.

31.3 AI for Predictive Modeling

AI can be used to build predictive models that can be used to forecast the future of biodiversity. These models can be used to assess the potential impacts of climate change, land use change, and other threats to biodiversity.

Theorem 31.3: Recurrent Neural Networks (RNNs)

Statement: RNNs are a type of deep learning model that are particularly well-suited to time series forecasting tasks.

Mathematical Formulation:

An RNN is a neural network that has a "memory" of past inputs. The output of an RNN at time t, h_t, is a function of the input at time t, x_t, and the output at time $t-1$, h_{t-1}:

$$h_t = f\left(W x_t + U h_{t-1}\right)$$

where W and U are weight matrices and f is a non-linear activation function.

The output of the RNN at time t can be used to make a prediction about the future. For example, the output could be a prediction of the abundance of a species at time $t+1$.

Proof of Concept:

The recurrent structure of an RNN allows it to learn temporal dependencies in the data. This is what makes RNNs so effective for time series forecasting tasks. The Long Short-Term Memory (LSTM) is a particularly popular type of RNN that is able to learn long-term dependencies in the data.

Q.E.D.

Example 31.4: Predicting the spread of an invasive species

AI can be used to build a model that predicts the spread of an invasive species. The model could be based on data on the species' biology, the climate, and the landscape. The model could be used to identify areas that are at high risk of invasion and to prioritize control efforts.

Problem 31.4: Predictive modeling for conservation

For a species of your choice, build a simple predictive model to forecast its future distribution under a scenario of climate change. You will need to use data on the species' current distribution and on projected future climate.

31.4 Supplementary Problems

130. Discuss the limitations of AI and ML for biodiversity conservation. For example, what are the risks of algorithmic bias? How can we ensure that these technologies are used in a responsible and ethical way?
131. How can AI and ML be used to engage the public in biodiversity conservation?
132. What is the role of big data in biodiversity conservation? What are the challenges of collecting, storing, and analyzing large datasets?
133. How can AI and ML be used to design more effective conservation interventions?
134. Discuss the potential for AI and ML to be used to create a "digital twin" of the Earth, which could be used to simulate the future of the planet and to test different policy scenarios.

31.5 References

[1] LeCun, Y., Bengio, Y., & Hinton, G. (2015). Deep learning. *nature*, 521(7553), 436-444.

[2] Breiman, L. (2001). Random forests. *Machine learning*, 45(1), 5-32.

[3] Hochreiter, S., & Schmidhuber, J. (1997). Long short-term memory. *Neural computation*, 9(8), 1735-1780.

[4] Tuia, D., Kellenberger, B., Beery, S., Costelloe, B. R., Zuffi, S., Risse, B., ... & Berger-Wolf, T. (2022). Perspectives in machine learning for wildlife conservation. *Nature communications*, 13(1), 1-15.

[5] Weinstein, B. G. (2018). A computer vision for animal ecology. *Journal of Animal Ecology*, 87(3), 533-545.

Chapter 32: Blockchain in Biodiversity Accounting

Blockchain is a distributed ledger technology that can be used to create a secure and transparent record of transactions. While it is best known for its use in cryptocurrencies like Bitcoin, blockchain has a wide range of potential applications in biodiversity conservation. This chapter explores the use of blockchain in biodiversity accounting.

32.1 Blockchain for Supply Chain Traceability

Blockchain can be used to create a transparent and tamper-proof record of a product's journey through the supply chain. This can be a valuable tool for combating illegal trade in wildlife and for ensuring that products are sourced from sustainable sources.

Theorem 32.1: The Distributed Ledger

Statement: A blockchain is a distributed ledger, which means that it is a database that is shared and synchronized across a network of computers. This makes it very difficult to tamper with the data, because any changes would have to be made to all copies of the ledger simultaneously.

Mathematical Formulation:

A blockchain is a sequence of blocks, where each block contains a set of transactions. Each block is linked to the previous block by a cryptographic hash. Let B_i be the i-th block in the chain. The hash of block B_i, $H(B_i)$, is a function of the data in the block and the hash of the previous block, $H(B_{i-1})$:

$$H(B_i)=f(\text{data}_i, H(B_{i-1}))$$

This creates a chain of blocks, where each block is cryptographically linked to the previous one. Any attempt to tamper with the data in a block would change the hash of that block, which would in turn change the hash of all subsequent blocks. This makes it very easy to detect tampering.

Proof of Immutability:

The immutability of a blockchain is a consequence of its distributed nature and its use of cryptography. To alter a transaction in a block, an attacker would have to alter the block itself and all subsequent blocks. This would require a huge amount of computational power, which makes it practically impossible to tamper with a blockchain.

Q.E.D.

Example 32.1: Tracking sustainable seafood

Blockchain can be used to track seafood from the fishing boat to the consumer. This can help to ensure that the seafood is legally caught and that it is not from an overfished stock. Each time the seafood changes hands, a new transaction is added to the blockchain, creating a complete and transparent record of its journey.

Example 32.2: Combating illegal logging

Blockchain can be used to track timber from the forest to the final product. This can help to combat illegal logging by making it more difficult to launder illegally harvested timber. Each log can be given a unique digital identity, which is then tracked on the blockchain as it moves through the supply chain.

Problem 32.1: Design a blockchain-based traceability system

Design a blockchain-based traceability system for a product of your choice, such as coffee or palm oil. What are the key data points that would need to be recorded on the blockchain? Who would be the key actors in the system?

Problem 32.2: The challenges of blockchain for traceability

Discuss the challenges of using blockchain for supply chain traceability. For example, how do you ensure that the data that is entered onto the blockchain is accurate? What are the costs of implementing a blockchain-based system?

32.2 Blockchain for Conservation Finance

Blockchain can be used to create new sources of funding for conservation and to make conservation finance more transparent and efficient.

Theorem 32.2: Smart Contracts

Statement: A smart contract is a self-executing contract with the terms of the agreement between buyer and seller being directly written into lines of code.

Mathematical Formulation:

A smart contract can be represented as a function, f, that takes a set of inputs, I, and produces a set of outputs, O:

$$O = f(I)$$

The inputs to the smart contract can be data from the blockchain or from external sources. The outputs of the smart contract can be transactions on the blockchain or actions in the real world.

A smart contract is executed automatically when certain conditions are met. For example, a smart contract could be programmed to automatically release a payment to a farmer when it has been verified that the farmer has conserved a certain area of forest.

Proof of Automation:

The automation of a smart contract is a consequence of the fact that it is a computer program that is executed on a decentralized network. There is no need for a central authority to execute the contract, because the contract is executed by the network itself. This makes smart contracts very efficient and secure.

Q.E.D.

Example 32.3: A blockchain-based payment for ecosystem services (PES) scheme

A smart contract could be used to automate a PES scheme. For example, a farmer could be paid for conserving a forest on their land. The smart contract could be programmed to automatically release the payment to the farmer once it has been verified that the forest is still standing. The verification could be done using satellite imagery or other remote sensing data.

Problem 32.3: Design a smart contract for conservation

Design a smart contract for a conservation project of your choice. What are the key terms of the contract? How would the contract be enforced?

32.3 Supplementary Problems

135. Discuss the potential for blockchain to be used to create a global market for ecosystem services.
136. How can blockchain be used to empower local communities and to give them a greater stake in conservation?
137. What are the environmental impacts of blockchain? How can we ensure that the use of blockchain for conservation does not do more harm than good?
138. Discuss the role of government in regulating the use of blockchain for conservation.
139. How can blockchain be used to improve the monitoring, reporting, and verification (MRV) of conservation projects?

32.4 References

[1] Nakamoto, S. (2008). *Bitcoin: A peer-to-peer electronic cash system*.

[2] Buterin, V. (2014). A next-generation smart contract and decentralized application platform. *white paper*.

[3] WWF. (2018). *Blockchain for conservation: A solution for illegal wildlife trade?*

[4] FAO. (2019). *Blockchain application in seafood value chains*.

[5] Tapscott, D., & Tapscott, A. (2016). *Blockchain revolution: how the technology behind bitcoin is changing money, business, and the world*. Penguin.

PART IX: CASE STUDIES AND APPLICATIONS

Chapter 33: Infrastructure and Real Estate

Infrastructure and real estate are major drivers of biodiversity loss. The construction of roads, dams, and buildings can lead to habitat destruction, fragmentation, and pollution. However, there is also a growing recognition of the potential for infrastructure and real estate to contribute to biodiversity conservation. This chapter explores the biodiversity impacts of infrastructure and real estate, as well as strategies for mitigation and the creation of green infrastructure.

33.1 Biodiversity Impacts of Infrastructure

Infrastructure projects can have a wide range of impacts on biodiversity, both direct and indirect.

- **Direct impacts:** The direct impacts of infrastructure include habitat destruction, fragmentation, and mortality (e.g., roadkill).
- **Indirect impacts:** The indirect impacts of infrastructure include changes in hydrology, pollution, and the spread of invasive species.

Theorem 33.1: The Mitigation Hierarchy

The mitigation hierarchy is a framework for managing the biodiversity impacts of development projects. It consists of four steps:

1. **Avoid:** Avoid impacts on biodiversity where possible.
2. **Minimize:** Minimize impacts that cannot be avoided.
3. **Restore:** Restore areas that have been degraded.
4. **Offset:** Offset any residual impacts that cannot be avoided, minimized, or restored.

Example 33.1: A road project

A new road project can have a major impact on biodiversity. The road can fragment habitats, create a barrier to wildlife movement, and increase the risk of roadkill. The mitigation hierarchy could be applied to this project as follows:

- **Avoid:** The road could be rerouted to avoid sensitive habitats.
- **Minimize:** The road could be designed to minimize its footprint, and wildlife crossings could be installed to allow animals to cross the road safely.
- **Restore:** Areas that have been degraded during construction could be restored.
- **Offset:** The company could invest in a conservation project to offset the residual impacts of the road.

Example 33.2: A dam project

A new dam project can have a major impact on river ecosystems. The dam can block the movement of fish, alter the flow of water and sediment, and flood terrestrial habitats. The mitigation hierarchy could be applied to this project as follows:

- **Avoid:** The dam could be located in a less sensitive area.
- **Minimize:** The dam could be designed to allow for fish passage and to maintain a more natural flow regime.
- **Restore:** Degraded habitats downstream of the dam could be restored.
- **Offset:** The company could invest in a project to protect a similar river ecosystem.

Problem 33.1: Mitigation hierarchy application

Apply the mitigation hierarchy to a new airport project. What are the key biodiversity impacts of the project? What are the potential mitigation measures?

Problem 33.2: Biodiversity offsets

Discuss the pros and cons of biodiversity offsets. What are the key challenges of designing and implementing a successful offset scheme?

33.2 Green Infrastructure

Green infrastructure is a network of natural and semi-natural areas that are designed and managed to deliver a wide range of ecosystem services. It can be a cost-effective way to improve the resilience of cities and to enhance the quality of life for residents.

Theorem 33.2: The Ecosystem Services Cascade

The ecosystem services cascade is a model that shows how biodiversity underpins the delivery of ecosystem services. It consists of four components:

- **Ecosystem structure:** The physical components of an ecosystem, such as plants, animals, and soil.
- **Ecosystem function:** The biological, geochemical, and physical processes that take place in an ecosystem, such as photosynthesis and nutrient cycling.
- **Ecosystem services:** The benefits that people obtain from ecosystems, such as clean air and water, food, and recreation.
- **Human well-being:** The contribution of ecosystem services to human well-being.

Example 33.3: Green roofs

Green roofs are a type of green infrastructure that can provide a wide range of ecosystem services in cities. They can help to reduce stormwater runoff, improve air quality, and provide habitat for wildlife.

Problem 33.3: Green infrastructure design

Design a green infrastructure plan for a new residential development. The plan should include a variety of green infrastructure elements, such as green roofs, rain gardens, and permeable pavements.

33.3 Supplementary Problems

1. Discuss the role of government in promoting the development of green infrastructure.
2. How can green infrastructure be used to improve the climate resilience of cities?

3. What is the business case for investing in green infrastructure?
4. How can we measure the performance of green infrastructure?
5. Discuss the potential for green infrastructure to be used to create more equitable and just cities.

33.4 References

[1] BBOP. (2012). *Standard on Biodiversity Offsets*.

[2] TEEB. (2010). *The Economics of Ecosystems and Biodiversity: Mainstreaming the Economics of Nature: A synthesis of the approach, conclusions and recommendations of TEEB*.

[3] European Commission. (2013). *Green Infrastructure (GI) — Enhancing Europe's Natural Capital*.

[4] Millennium Ecosystem Assessment. (2005). *Ecosystems and Human Well-being: Synthesis*.

[5] McDonald, R. I., Fargione, J., Kiesecker, J., Miller, W. M., & Powell, J. (2009). Energy sprawl or energy efficiency: climate policy impacts on natural habitat for the United States of America. *PloS one*, 4(8), e6802.

Chapter 34: Consumer Goods and Retail

The consumer goods and retail sector has a major impact on biodiversity, both through its direct operations and through its vast and complex supply chains. This chapter explores the biodiversity impacts of the consumer goods and retail sector, as well as strategies for reducing these impacts and for promoting more sustainable consumption patterns.

34.1 Biodiversity Impacts of Supply Chains

The biodiversity impacts of the consumer goods and retail sector are largely driven by the production of the raw materials that are used in their products. These impacts can be particularly significant for food, clothing, and cosmetics.

- **Food:** The production of food is a major driver of deforestation, water use, and greenhouse gas emissions. The expansion of agriculture is the leading cause of habitat loss worldwide.
- **Clothing:** The production of clothing can have a major impact on water resources. Cotton, in particular, is a very water-intensive crop. The dyeing and finishing of textiles can also release harmful chemicals into the environment.
- **Cosmetics:** The production of cosmetics can have a major impact on biodiversity. Some cosmetics contain ingredients that are derived from endangered species, such as palm oil and sandalwood.

Theorem 34.1: The Product Life Cycle

The environmental impacts of a product occur throughout its life cycle, from raw material extraction to manufacturing, use, and disposal. A life cycle assessment (LCA) can be used to identify the key environmental hotspots in a product's life cycle and to prioritize actions to reduce its impact.

Example 34.1: The life cycle of a t-shirt

The life cycle of a cotton t-shirt includes the following stages:

- **Raw material extraction:** The cultivation of cotton, which requires large amounts of water, pesticides, and fertilizers.
- **Manufacturing:** The spinning, weaving, dyeing, and finishing of the cotton fabric.
- **Use:** The washing and drying of the t-shirt, which consumes energy and water.
- **Disposal:** The disposal of the t-shirt in a landfill or incinerator.

Example 34.2: The life cycle of a smartphone

The life cycle of a smartphone includes the following stages:

- **Raw material extraction:** The mining of minerals, such as cobalt, coltan, and gold, which can have significant social and environmental impacts.
- **Manufacturing:** The manufacturing of the components and the assembly of the smartphone.
- **Use:** The charging of the smartphone, which consumes electricity.
- **Disposal:** The disposal of the smartphone, which can release toxic chemicals into the environment if it is not properly recycled.

Problem 34.1: LCA of a product

Choose a consumer product and conduct a simple LCA to identify its key biodiversity impacts. What are the main environmental hotspots in the product's life cycle?

Problem 34.2: Reducing the impact of a product

For the product you chose in Problem 34.1, identify three actions that could be taken to reduce its biodiversity impact.

34.2 Product Footprinting

Product footprinting is a method for assessing the environmental impact of a single product. It can be a valuable tool for companies to identify and reduce the environmental impacts of their products, and for consumers to make more informed purchasing decisions.

Theorem 34.2: The Environmental Footprint

The European Commission has developed a method for calculating the Environmental Footprint of a product. The method is based on a life cycle assessment and it covers a wide range of environmental impacts, including climate change, water use, and biodiversity loss.

Example 34.3: The environmental footprint of a pair of jeans

The environmental footprint of a pair of jeans can be significant. The production of the cotton can require large amounts of water and pesticides. The dyeing and finishing of the denim can release harmful chemicals into the environment. And the transportation of the jeans from the factory to the consumer can generate greenhouse gas emissions.

Problem 34.3: Product footprint calculation

Using a publicly available product footprinting tool, calculate the environmental footprint of a product of your choice. What are the key drivers of the product's footprint?

34.3 Supplementary Problems

1. Discuss the role of certification schemes, such as Fairtrade and the Rainforest Alliance, in promoting more sustainable consumption patterns.
2. How can retailers use their purchasing power to drive improvements in the sustainability performance of their suppliers?
3. What is the role of government in regulating the environmental impacts of the consumer goods and retail sector?
4. How can we encourage consumers to make more sustainable purchasing decisions?
5. Discuss the concept of a "circular economy" and how it can be applied to the consumer goods and retail sector.

34.4 References

[1] European Commission. (2013). *Product Environmental Footprint (PEF) Guide*.

[2] The Consumer Goods Forum. (2020). *Sustainable Supply Chain Initiative*.

[3] Textile Exchange. (2021). *Preferred Fiber & Materials Market Report*.

[4] Ellen MacArthur Foundation. (2017). *A new textiles economy: Redesigning fashion's future*.

[5] IPCC. (2022). *Climate Change 2022: Mitigation of Climate Change. Contribution of Working Group III to the Sixth Assessment Report of the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change*.